

AN  
Epitome of Froffard:

OR,  
A Summarie Collection of the most  
*memorable Histories contained in his*  
Chronicle, chiefly concerning the State of  
*England, and France.*

*Wherin the famous Warres and Conquests*  
of king Edward the third, with the honorable atchieue-  
*ments of the Blacke Prince, and other his sonnes, both in*  
*Fraunce, Spaine, & Portugall, are compen-*  
*diously described.*

Entermixed with other historical occurrents of those times, ve-  
ry worthy, and profitable to be had in remembrance.

*Compsled in Latine by Iohn Sleydane, and translated*  
*into English, By P. G.*



AT LONDON,  
Printed by Thomas Purfoot.  
An. Dom. 1611.



THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY OF

CHICAGO

1891

Entered for mailing

March 1, 1891

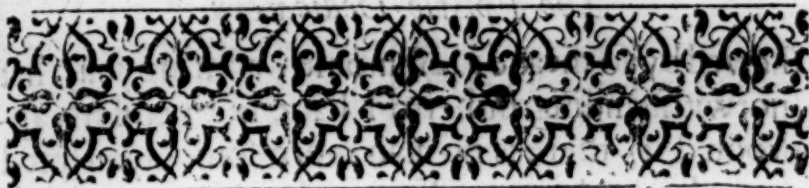
Postage paid

at Chicago, Ill.

Permit No. 100

Printed by Thomas

at Chicago, Ill.



♪ To the right vertuous, and worthy,  
louer of learning, deseruer of honour,  
Sir Henrie Docwra knight.

SIR,

**I** am bold here to present you with  
my translation of *Froßards* Abridge-  
ment, being the first fruits of my stu-  
dies; and as it were the essay of my  
paines in this vnprofitable kind of  
employment. The worke is small,  
and to one (as your selfe) already plenteously furnished  
with all historicall knowledge, can bee but of small  
vse; though otherwise worthy of good regard, as  
comprehending in fewe woords many famous and  
memorable matters: but the affection wherewith  
I offer it, is great; and in that respect alone, though  
it haue nothing else to commend it, I presume it shall  
be well accepted. I haue long carried in my mind a  
thankfull acknowledgement of many fauours and  
courtesies receiued from you, and much desire to  
shew, how much I esteeme my selfe bound and be-  
holding to you; which wanting worthyer meanes  
to expresse, I haue thought good by this dedicatiō to  
signifie: and withall, so much of my loue as may bee  
A shewed

### *The Epistle Dedicatory.*

shewed by so meane a testimonie : assuring you, that  
(notwithstanding hitherto I haue but slenderly ap-  
proou'd it) there is no man more louingly affected  
towards you than my selfe, nor that more truely ho-  
nours and respects you, or with better intent profes-  
seth to deserue your good opinion. If in reading  
this Epitome you find aught to content you, it is that  
I wish, but cannot promise : being onely the substance  
of an History, close couched together in a brieue me-  
thod, and plaine phrase, without art or ornament of  
speech, more profitable to be knowne, then pleasing  
to be read : but if my indeauours prooue successfull,  
I hope hereafter to gratifie your good acceptance of  
this with some other worke of greater value. Time  
and industry may bring forth better fruites of my la-  
bours, whereof when euer they come to perfection,  
your selfe shall be partaker, as in the meane time of my  
best wishes for your best well-fare, and happyest for-  
tunes. I rest a bounden debtor to your kindries, and  
as a louing kinsman, alwayes at your dispose,

*Persuall Golding.*



To the Reader.



Mongst all our moderne writers,  
there is none hath more faithfully com-  
piled the History of his time, then Fro-  
sard ; who as he witnesseth of him selfe,  
spent many yeeres in travelling through  
diuers parts of Christendome, frequen-  
ting the Courts of Princes, and acquainting himselfe with  
such persons as were most conuersant in publique affaires ;  
so as either by his owne obseruation, or report of other eye-  
witnesses, he became certainly informed of the principall oc-  
currents happening in those times ; which hee diligently  
recorded and left to posterity in a large and laborious Chro-  
nicle. A brieue view whereof gentle Reader I here giue  
in this Abridgement, containing in a short summe the sub-  
stance of his whole worke, and comprising as it were in an  
handfull, all the speciall matters of moment therein discour-  
sed. And cheifly the glorious acts and enterprises of our  
English worthies, King Edward the third and his Sonnes;  
with whose entrance to the crowne of England, and title  
to the crowne of Fraunce, this Epitome taketh his begin-  
ning ; continuing an historicall narration of the affaires  
of most States in Christendome, till the end of king Ri-  
chard the seconds raigne, with the warres, counsels, lea-  
gues, and alliances of Princes, description of their qualitie

## To the Reader.

and disposition, the correspondence they held with neighbor States, how associate and confedered together, and for what causes and respects, private or publicke. All this briefly and succinctly related, and so honourably and sincerely concerning our English nation, as by no forraine writer that I know, the like. Wherein thou mayst further consider, to what height of honour and reputation this kingdome was raised, through the vertue of those martiall Princes, King Edward the third, and the blacke Prince his Sonne; and the declining thereof againe, when those mighty pillars were fallen that supported it: and likewise behold the picture of a ruinous dis-membred common-wealth, in the state of Fraunce under Phillip de Valoys, and king Iohn, with the repairing of the same afterward by the prudent government of king Charles the fift; To whose onely wisdom and policy, Fraunce may deservedly attribute the honour of recovering her lost liberty. These with other matters of good obseruance this Epitome comprehenderh, which, with the well accepting of my small paines in translating it, I commend to thy friendly courtesie, hoping that such errors as haue escaped the Presse, shall be corrected and excused by thine owne understanding. Farewell.

Thy friend, P. Golding.

The Table.

**A** *Ngolefme* wonne by the English. Pag. 16.

*Aguillion* valiantly defended by the English men. 17.

Ambassadour of the Duke of *Lancasters*, imprisoned by the king of *Arragon*. 148

**B**

*Bayon* and *Burdeaux* receiue the English men. 15

*Barwiki Castle* surprised by the Scottes. 69

Battell of *Cressie*. 19

Battaile of *Poitiers*. 28

Battaile of *Nauaret*. 48

*Benedict* Pope taken prisoner by the French men 210, deposed from the Papacy. 215

Bishop of *Norwich* sent to make warres in *France*. 120

*Bruges* taken by the *Gauntoys* 112 yeelded to the French King. 117

**C**

*Caen* in *Normandy* wonne by the English. 18

*Calice* besieged and wonne by King *Edward*. 20 & 24

*Cambray* besieged. Pag. 4

*Charles* of *Bloys* 4, taken prisoner 23, slaine. 40

*Charles* the fift crowned king of *France* 39, empoysoned by meanes of the king of *Navar* 67, his death 88, and commendation. 91

*Charles* the sixt king of *France* his coronation 90, vndertaketh the Earle of *Flaunders* quarrell 114, & 122, his marriage 127, aydeth the *Genowayes* against the *Moore*s 180, aydeth the king of *Hungarie* against the *Turkes* 194, falleth into a frenzie. 189

*Clement* Pope. 25, 75, 192.

Constable of *France* appointed to inuade *England* 150, treacherously assaulted and almost slaine. 188

**D**

*David* king of Scottes taken prisoner 21, released 29, dyeth. 65

Discourse of the Dukes of *Milaine*. 195

Duke of *Aniow* receiueh a great gift of the pope, 80, his death. 125

Duke of *Brstaine* deceasseth 9, flyeth into *England* 65, reconciled

**A**



### The Table:

to the French king.	Pag. 94	of Henault.	Pag. 199
Duke of Ireland.	158		
Dukes of Gelders, their history.	162		
Durham, sacked by the Scots.	11		
<b>E</b>			
Edward the second king of Eng- land.	2	Galeas Duke of Millaine.	182
Edward the third, his coronation and marriage 2, taketh vpon him the title of <i>Fraunce</i> 5, made Lieue- tenant of the Romaine Empire 3, passeth into <i>Fraunce</i> 18, 33, his death and commendation.	66	Gascon Earle of <i>Foys</i> his historie 130, his death.	185
Edward the blacke Prince 21, 26, goeth into <i>Spaine</i> 46, taketh an in- curable disease there 60, his death.	66	Gaunt besieged by the Earle of <i>Flaunders</i> .	96, 104
Edmund of Langley sent with an armie into <i>Spaine</i> .	100	Gauntoys ouerthrowne by the Earle of <i>Flaunders</i> 96, by the french King 117, reconciled to their Lord.	130
Earle of Mountfort, invested in the Dukedome of <i>Brittaine</i> , by the King of England 9, his death.	10	Guy Earle of <i>Blois</i> .	184
Earle of Pembroke, the Kings Sonne in law, sent into <i>Fraunce</i> 61, taken prisoner.	62	<b>H</b>	
Earle of Henault slaine.	17	Henrie the bastard King of <i>Castile</i> 43, expulsed by Prince <i>Edward</i> 49, recouereth his kingdome again 52, aydeth the French king against the King of England 58, his death.	74
Earle of S. Paule.	205	Henrie the Duke of <i>Lancasters</i> Sonne 207, vsurpeth the crowne of England.	214
<b>F</b>			
Ferdinando King of <i>Portugall</i> his death.	110	<b>I</b>	
Flemmings rebellious against their Lord 5, confederate with the King of England, <i>ibid</i> slaine by the English.	121	Iaques de <i>Arteuill</i> his authority amongst the Flemmings 8, his death.	16
Friseland subdued by the Earle		Iaques of <i>Burbon</i> slaine.	37
		Iaques le <i>Gris</i> .	148
		Iohn King of <i>Spaine</i> 74, claimeth the crowne of <i>Portugall</i> 135, his death.	182
		<i>Ipre</i> besieged.	96
		Insurrection in <i>Paris</i> .	105
		Isabell wife to King <i>Edward</i> the second.	1
			Sir

## The Table.

Sir *John of Henaalt*. Pag. 17  
*John King of Fraunce* 25, taken  
 prisoner 28, his death. 38  
*John of Gaunt Duke of Lancaster*,  
 sent with an army into *Fraunce* 55,  
 marryeth *Constance* one of the  
 daughters of *Don Pietro* 61, made  
 protectour of *England*, during the  
 minority of King *Richard* 67, say-  
 leth into *Portugall* 141, made Duke  
 of *Aquitaine* 192, his death. 211

### K

*Katherine* the Duke of *Lancasters*  
 daughter married to *Henry* prince  
 of *Castile*. 177  
 King of *Navarre* imprisoned by  
 the French King 26, escapeth 29,  
 craueth ayde of King *Richard* 67,  
 burned by misfortune in his bed.  
 108  
 King of *Maiorica* 45, his death.  
 60

### L

Lady of *Mountfort* her war-like  
 behauiour. 10, 11, 13  
 League between the King of *Na-*  
*varre* and the king of *England* 71,  
 betweene the king of *England* and  
 the Duke of *Gelders* and others 3,  
 betweene the king of *England*, and  
 the *Flemmings* 5, between the *Bra-*  
*banders*, *Flemmings*, and *Heno-*  
*ways* 7, betweene the French king  
 and the king of *Scots*. 4  
*Leuf* an impregnable Castle. 108

*Lewis* Earle of *Flaunders* vexed  
 with rebellious subjects 83, besie-  
 ged 84, ouerthrowne by the *Gaim-*  
*toys* 112, his death. Pag. 124

*Limoges* taken by the French 59,  
 recouered againe, and raced by  
 Prince *Edward*. ibid.

Lords of *Gascoine* rebell agaiust  
 Prince *Edward*. 51  
 Lord *Cowey* a valiant warriour 195  
 his death. 202

### M

*S. Malowes* in *Britaine* besieged  
 73  
 Miseries of *Fraunce* during the  
 kings captiuitie 29, of the English  
 men in *Spaine*. 159

### N

*Nants* in *Britaine* besieged. 1492  
*Nicopolis* besieged by the *Christi-*  
*ans* 194, rescued by the *Turkes*,  
 & the christians ouerthrowen. 201  
 Noble men giuen in hostage by  
 king *John* of *Fraunce*. 35

### O

Ouerthrow of the *Spaniards* and  
 French men, by the *Portugals* and  
 English men. 137

### P

Peace betweene the *Nauarroyes*  
 and French men 32, betweene the  
 English and French 35, betweene  
 the French King and the Earle of

### A 2

*Mount-*

## The Table.

*Mountfort.* pag: 41

*Peter* king of *Arragon* his death 147

*Don Pietro* a tyrant, king of *Castile* 42, restored to his kingdom by prince *Edward* 48, his ingratitude 50, his death. 52

*Phillip* wife to King *Edward* the third. 2

*Phillip de Valois* chosen King of *Fraunce* 2 his death. 25

*Phillip de Ardenill* 99, slaine. 117

*Phillip* Duke of *Burgundy*, Earle of *Flanders* in right of his wife 126

*Phillip* the Duke of *Lancasters* daughter married to the King of *Portugall*. 143, 149

*Peter de Boys*. 97

*Poitiers* wonne by the English 21, rendered to the French. 63

*Prouost* of *Paris* slaine. 31

### Q

Queene of *Navarre* dyeth. 70

Queene of *Naples*, her history. 77

### R

Rebellion of *Wat Tyler*, *Jacke Straw* &c. 100, of the *Gauntoys* against the Earle of *Flanders*. 85

*Richard* the second King of *England* his birth 46, his coronation 66 his marriage 107, 199, deposed 214

*Rochell* yeilded to the French. 64

*Robert* of *Artoys* 3, his death. 13

*Robert* King of *Sicill*. 4

*Robert* King of *Scotland*. 65

*Sir Robert Knolles* a valiant Cap. taine. pag: 58

### S

Schisme in the Church. 119

### T

*Thomas* of *Woodstocke* sent with an armie into *Fraunce* 87, murdered at *Calice*. 206

*Thomas Mowbray* 207, his death 215. *Thomas Arundell* Archbishop of *Canterbury*. 212

Tumult about the election of a Pope. 70

### T

Truce betweene the English and French 8, 14, 29, 66, betweene *Charles* of *Blois* and the Lady of *Mountfort* 12, betweene the English and Scottish 13, 58, betweene the French, English, Spanish, Scottish, and *Gauntoys* 124, betweene the Spaniards, & *Portugalles* 138, betweene *England*, *Fraunce*, and their confederates, 177

### V

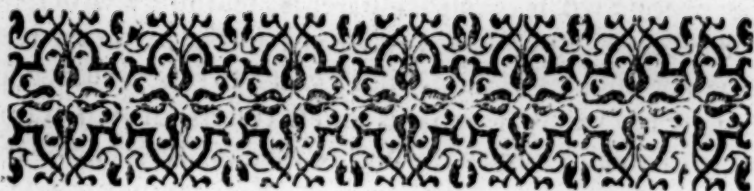
*Vannes* surprised by the English, recovered again by the French. 13

*Vrbane* the sixt chosen Pope 70. his death. 179

### W

White-cappes a seditious faction in the city of *Gaunt*. 80





## *An Epitome of Froßard.*

OR,

*A summaric collection of the most memorable histories contained in his Chronicle, chiefly concerning the state of England and Fraunce.*

### *The first Booke.*



*Phillip*, surnamed the faire, King of *Fraunce*, had three Sonnes, *Lewis*, *Phillip*, and *Charles*, and one daughter. The two eldest succeeding one another, and deceasing without issue, left the kingdome by descent to their brother *Charles*. This *Charles* had a Sonne, but he dyed very

young during the life of his Father. The daughter of *Her name* King *Phillip* and sister to *Charles*, was married to *Edward* <sup>was Isabell.</sup> the second King of *England*, who begat of her a Sonne named *Edward*, of whose most noble disposition, stout courage, and princely vertues, honourable mention is made in many places of this worke.

There is a saying in *Homer*, that Children for the most part

B

part

part prooue worse then their parents, seldome any better, but in this King it fell out otherwise : For his father was a man of euill disposition, much giuen to ryot and excesse, and greatly led by sicophants and flatterers, of which sort the principall were twoo Noble men of the house of the *Spencers*. These so bewitched the Kings minde, that by their counsell and instigation hee put to death some twoo and twenty of the chiefeft Barons of *England*, and not so contented, banished also his Wife and her Son wholly out of the Realme. But the Queene at length, through the assistance of her faithfull friends beeing brought backe with her Sonne into *England*, not onely exacted most seuerer punishment vppon those flatterers the Father and the Son, but further for diuers graue and weighty considerations, by authority of Parliament remooued her husband from ruling the state as a person vnfit for gouernment, and restrained him to safe custodie. Which done, the worthy Prince *Edward* (a most vertuous Son of a most vitious Father) who before had liued in exile with his Mother, as is already declared, was crowned King of *England* at *London* by the name of *Edward* the Third, in the Sixteenth yeare of his age, and the yeare of our Lord 1326. He tooke to Wife *Phillip* the daughter of *William* Earle of *Henault* and *Holland*, whome he had formerly begun to fancy amongst the rest of her Sisters at such time as he came with his mother as a banished person out of *England* into *Henault*.

1326.

But the Peeres of *Fraunce* after the death of King *Charles*, would in no wise admit his Sister (matched to the King of *England*) to the succession of the crowne, because it was now of old receiued as a custome in that country, not to leaue the charge of so great a Kingdome to bee mannaaged by the discretion of women. Wherevppon they likewise renounced *Edward* the Third, her Sonne and Grand-childe to King *Phillip* as descending of the female line : and so with one consent they gaue the scepter and soueraignty to *Phillip* of *Valoys*, coulsen germain to King *Phillip* deceased.

Vppon

## *Frossards Chronicle.*

3

Vppon this occasion ensued most cruell warres and bitter enmity, *Edward* the Third presuming that he had more rightfull interest, and a better title to the kingdome of *Fraunce*, then *Phillip* of *Valoys*.

And to further this quarrell, it so fell out, that a certain Noble man of great account called *Robert* of *Artoys*, one who had been long of singuler respect and estimation with King *Phillip*, at length falling in his disfauor, was banished the Court, and could be suffered to rest in no place by reason of the kings displeasure. This man after many wanderings, at last arriued in *England* where hee found quiet harbour and abiding: and being by the King entertained as a counsellor, ceated not by his perswasions to prouoke and stirre him vp to armes against the French King.

*Robert* of *Artoys* commeth into *England*, and the occasion of his coming.

King *Edward* purposing to warre vppon *Phillip*, sollicitated the frendshippe of the Flemmings, at that time remaining scarce in due obedience of their Lord: whereof the French King hauing intelligence, by the helpe of the Earle of *Flaunders* the sojourning in his Court, he procured certain places of *Flaunders* to bee fortified, where the English men must of necessity passe when they should come into *Fraunce*. The King of *England* sent his forces against them and in a pitched field the Flemmings were ouerthrowne and chased.

And further for the better dispatch of his affaires and to compassse the fauourof the Germaine Princes, the King of *England* came himselfe to *Antwerpe*, where he entred into a league of amitie with the Dukes of *Gelders*, and *Iuliers*, the Archbishop of *Colen*, and diuers others. And that the Emperour should take no offence thereat, it was concluded, the Duke of *Iuliers* should be addressed vnto him in the name of the King of *England* and the rest, to acquainte him with these proceedings. The Emperour was so farre from dislike of the matter, that he also created the King of *England* Lieuetenant Generall of the Romaine Empire.

The chiefe cause why *Lewis* of *Bauier* the Emperour, so highly honoured the King of *England*, was for that he hoped



ped during the tumults of the warres, hee might happily take some opportunity to recouer againe the Citie of *Cambray*, which being indeede a Citie imperiall, was notwithstanding with-holden from him by the French men.

The French King in the meane while contracted a league with *David* King of Scottes, who for the same purpose came with his Wife to *Paris*. Hee sent also a power into *Scotland* to molest the English at home, that thereby their forces might be more weakened, and the King of *Englands* puissance abated.

*Cambray* besieged.

The King of *England* proceeding in his purpose, with the power of his confederates besieged *Cambray* to recouer it againe to the Empire. But the Citie was so well provided both of munition and victuall, that hee attempted it in vaine : wherefore abandoning the siege, hee passed with his forces into *Fraunce*.

Assoone as the English army was entred into *Fraunce*, the Earle of *Henault*, who of late succeeded in the roome of his deceased Father, and had been present at the siege of *Cambray* (as a matter of dutye in regard it concerned the Empire) refused now any longer to serue the King of *England* for feare of displeasing the French King, because hee thought that in this warre the King of *England* rather intended his own busines then the affaires of the Empire.

The French King at such time as his enemies forces were aduanced against him, and that the armyes on both sides stood ready raunged in order of battell, albeit hee had a farre greater power then the King of *England*, (as hauing in his armye aboue an hundreth thousand men, ) yet notwithstanding, partly perswaded by his Lords, but principally terrified by the letters of *Robert* King of *Sicill* his neere kinsman an excellent Astronomer, hee withdrew himselfe and departed without giuing battell. And so the King of *England* returned into *Brabant*, and the French King into his own Country, much displeased with himselfe that he had refused to fight. The King of *England* shortly after

after being well assured of the faithfulness of his confederates, passed over into his own kingdom.

About this time in the Citie of *Gant*, a certaine person of the baser sort named *Iaques* of *Artemill*, purchased himselfe such estimation among the commons, that in continuance of time there was none able to withstand his bold attempts, no not the Earle of *Flaunders* himselfe. The King of *England* to procure the good will of the *Flemmings*, allyed this fellow vnto him, as one that might affoord him much helpe in his warres hereafter. Of this *Iaques* henceforth we shall often haue occasion to make mention.

The King of *England* before hee returned into his owne countrey as is a little before declared, had obtained a grant of the *Flemmings* to ayde him in his warres, whereby himselfe might not onely assaile his enemy with the greater force, but they also recouer their lost towns, as *Lisle*, *Tourney*, and certaine others holden at that time by the *French*. But the *Flemmings* pretended great difficulty in the matter, before they would conclude this league with the *English*. For they had formerly couenanted with the *French* King, and bound themselves vpon the forfeiture of twenty hundred thousand crownes, neuer to beare armes against the King of *Fraunce*, and these conditions were ratified by the Bishop of *Rome*. Hereupon they perswaded the King of *England* to take vpon him the armes and stile of the Realme of *Fraunce*, and in so doing they thought themselves discharged of their oath. The King after much deliberation condescended to their requests, and so the league was established betwene them.

King *Edward* taketh vpon him the title of *Fraunce*.

The *French* King hauing intelligence of the matter, practised with the *Flemmings* by some friends of his, as it were in the name of the Pope, to forsake the King of *England* and adhere to him againe, adding large promises of great reward: all which notwithstanding they refused, wherevpon presently ensued the Popes thunderbolt. It made the *Flemmings* shrewdly affraid, but the King of *England* so en-

couraged and hartened them by letters and messengers, that they brookt the matter with the better patience. Then beganne the warres to growe hot between the *Flemmings* and *French* men, and the King of *Fraunce* sent his eldest Sonne as Generall, who with a puissant Armye marched through the country euen as farre as *Henault*.

Whilste *William* Earle of *Henault* for the establishing of his affayres, traualled first into *England*, and afterward to *Lewis* the Emperour, the *French* men in his abtience did meruailously afflict his country by making continuall incursions vpon it. But the Earle at his returne out of *Germanie*, hauing associated himselfe with the King of *England*, the Emperour, and diuers Princes of the *Netherlands*, raysed a mighty power, and being also ayded by him, who in a manner had the hearts of the *Flemmings* at commaund, I meane *Iaques* of *Arteville*, enforced his enemies to retyre.

So the Armyes on both sides being prepared to fight, the Earle of *Henault* was very desirous to come to the encounter: but the Duke of *Brabant* was of another opinion, and with weightie reasons dissuaded him from hazarding the battaile till such time as the King of *England* were returned, whome they accounted as Generall of this warre.

As soone as the *French* King vnderstood the King of *England* was departed into his owne countrey, he gaue commaundement that a fleete of Shippes should presently be rigged and put forth to Sea, to attend his comming backe, and then to assaile him with great violence, and bend all their forces to enpeach his landing. But the King of *England* encountering them in his passage, put them valiantly to the worse, and with fortunes fauourable assistance arrived safely in *Flanders*.

*Robert* King of *Sicill* of whome wee haue formerly spoken, foreseeing by the Art of Astrologie, that the kingdom of *Fraunce* should sustaine great dammage by the *Engl.*



*English* men, for the great affection he bare to that Realme, traualled himselfe to *Auinion*, and there made earnest sute to the Pope and Colledge of Cardinalls, that they would set an attonement betweene those two puissant Princes. They promised to employ their endeouours, so the mindes of the kings were disposed according.

About this time the *Brabanders, Flemmings, and Henowaies*, entred into a most strict league among themselves, in such sort that if any of those countryes should happen to be molested with warre, or afflicted by any other meanes, the rest were bound to succour and assist them: And if any dissention or variance chaunced, they should arbitrate the matter among themselves, or else if the case were such that they could not decyde it, then it should bee determined by the discretion of the King of *England*, into whose hands they were all sworne to put the controuersie and to abide by his arbitrimēt.

The King of *England* associated with the ayd of his confederates, besieged *Tourney* with a strong army. Many assaults were giuen, but they preuailed not by reason of the valiant defence made by the Townsemen, who were furnished throughly aforehand, both with men and all thinges needefull to offend the enemye by commaundement from the *French* King, who was priuie to a great part of the deuises and consultations among his enemies.

*Tourney* besieged.

During the siege before *Tourney*, the *French* King sending certain companies into *Scotland*, earnestly entreated the captains left there in Garrison for the safety of their country by King *Dauid*, to make some invasion vppon the *English*, that by this meanes his enemye might bee enforced to rayse his siege and returne for the defence of his own country: promising moreover that he would send them store of souldiers whose seruice they might employ in that action. The *Scots* stoutly vndertaking the matter, wonne certain holdes and much endammaged their enemy.

The *French* King in the meane while levied a great armye

to rayse the siege before *Tourney*. There came to his ayde *Charles* King of *Boheme*, the Dukes of *Burgoyne*, *Britaine*, *Burbon*, and *Lorraine*, the Earles of *Bar*, *Sauoy*, *Gencua*, *Alanson*, and *Flaunders*. And besides these, the kings of *Nauarre*, and *Scotland*, the one as confederate, the other as feudarie to the crowne of *Fraunce*.

That the Earle of *Flaunders* followed the *French* King as we haue declared, whilst the *Flemmings* tooke part with the *English*, let it not seeme straunge to any, for thus standeth the case. This *Jaques* of *Artenuill* whome we spake of before, was become so popular and growne to such authoritie amongst the commons, that the Earle himselfe could finde no safe abyding in his own country, but was constrained for that cause to commit himselfe to the protection of the *French* King.

A truce taken  
for twelue  
moneths.

The siege of *Tourney* continued some three moneths, during which space *Jane* of *Valoys* the *French* kings sister, and mother to the Earle of *Henault*, laboured very earnestly to procure a composition. At length shee obtained thus much, that a day was appointed for a meeting to be had betweene the Lords of *Fraunce* and *England*, where they agreed vpon a truce for twelue months space, with condition that each party should hold whatsoeuer he had gotten by battell. Herevpon the armies were both dismissed. And this further was concluded, that at a certain time prefixed within the yeare, another treatie should be had at *Arras*, where commissioners from both Princes, and from Pope *Clement* should meete together, and this likewise was performed. There the *English* men demaunded much, and the *French* men profered nothing, saue the Earledome of *Ponthieu*, which was giuen before in dowrie to King *Edwards* mother, when shee married into *England*. More then thus was nothing done in this treaty, onely another yeere added to the truce, and the King of *England* returned into his Country.

Prolonged  
for twelue  
moneths  
more.

When things were thus set at a stay, and that the Duke  
of

of *Britaine* prepared to returne into his owne country, he was seised vpon in his iourney by a most violent sicknes, whereof in short space he dyed, leauing behind no lawfull issue male to succeed him. He had two brothers, of whome the one which was Earle of *Mountfort*, was his brother onely by the fathers side, the other both by father and mother, but he died before him leauing issue one only daughter, whome the Duke of *Britaine* in his life time ioyned in marriage to *Charles of Bloys* sitters Son to *Phillip* the French King. For the Duke fearing it might so fall out, that after his decease his brother the Earle of *Mountfort* would seise the seigniory of *Britaine* into his owne handes, and by that meanes dispossesse, and as it were disinherite the lawfull daughter of his brother by the whole bloud, thought good to prouide a stay for the Lady by marriage, and therefore his desire was the rather to match her to the kings nephew, because if the other should make any attēpt hereafter, he might the easilier be resisted. And so it came to passe. For the Earle of *Mountfort* had no sooner vnderstanding of his brothers death, but that partly by force, & partly by composition he possessed himselfe of the greater part of *Britane*. And then the better to supporte his cause and stablish his estate, he went ouer to the King of *England*, where relating the whole discourse of his proceedings, he receiued from him the inuestiture of his dukedome. And the King of *England* considering that by this meanes he might haue a ready passage through *Britaine* into *Fraunce*, promised both his counsell and furtherance to the newe Duke against his enemye, whether it were the French King or any other whosoeuer. For he had lost the French kings fauor before, euer since he brought in the *Germanes* to serue in his warres, vpon whome he had spent such a huge masse of money, without accomplishing any notable enterprise. And this is the true cause and originall ground of this warre.

*Charles of Bloys* being aduertised of the proceedings and

C

enterpri-



enterprises of *Mountfort*, made great complaint of him to the French King. After consultation had, the King commaunded that the Earle should be summoned to the Parliament of *Paris*. The Earle came, and after some debatings on both sides, he was enioyned by the King not to depart the Citie for a certaine season. Neuerthelesse he conueyed himselfe secretly away, and so sentence was giuen with *Charles*. It was a great blot in *Mountforts* case that he had been inuested in his Duchie by the King of *England*. And thervvpon the French King denouncing *Charles* to be rightfull heyre, encouraged him with his own mouth to recouer by force of armes the seigniorie due vnto him both by iudgement of law and right of inheritance : promising not only his owne ayde, but procuring other Lords also to assist him in the maintenance of his rightful quarrell. The warre was vndertaken (in the behalfe of *Charles*) with the power of the Peeres of *Fraunce* his friendly assistants. Besides other, at length the Citie of *Nants* (the principall in those partes) was forced by assault. There *Mountfort* himselfe was taken prisoner, and from thence conueyed to *Paris* to the King, by whose commaundement being cast in prison, he there ended his life. His Lady in the meane time bearing her fortune with a true manlike resolution, encouraged the fainting hearts of her people, and both fortified with Garrisons and furnished with victuals; the rest of the holdes yet vntaken by the enemye.

Vppon conclusion of the truce between the kings of *England* and *Fraunce*, and dissoluing the siege before *Tournay*, the King of *England* returning home, perceiued what great annoyance the Scottes had wrought to his country in the meane while : wherevvpon he assembled an Armie. The Scottes being pressed with great extremitie in the absence of the King, purchased a truce of the English vppon condition, that if within foure moneths space the King did not prouide for the rescue, they should yeeld. This was signified to the King of Scottes, who therevvpon returned,

# Frossards Chronicle.

II

turned, and being ayded with forraine power, wonne certaine holdes from the English. Amongst other the Citie of *Durham* was one, where no mercy was shewen to no sex, age, nor order whatsoeuer, but the very churches and all were consumed with fire. Afterward perceiuing that by further prosecuting his enterprise, he did but lose his labour, and vnderstanding moreouer that the *King of England* approached with a mightie power, vpon deliberation with his counsell, he retired : In the meane while ministering proffers of a truce which notwithstanding he had no intention to admitte till he had first taken aduise of the French King with whome he was formerly confederate.

*Durham take  
& sacked by  
the Scottish.*

The Lordes of *Fraunce* departing out of *Britaine* for no other respect but because the winter whether compelled them, returned againe with their forces in the beginning of Sommer, purposing to bring the rest of that Duchy in subiection. Whereof the Lady of *Mountfort* being aduertised, shee sent ambassadours to the *King of England*, requiring ayde vpon this condition, that her Son whome shee had borne by the Earle of *Mountfort*, should take to wife some one of the kings daughters. But the succours which he sent for, the space of well nere twoo moneths together were tost vpon the Seas with stormes and contrarie windes, in such sort as they could by no meanes attaine to their desired porte, so that in the meane season certaine places were recovered by the French men. But it is admirable to relate with what courage and stoutnesse the Lady *Mountfort* demeaned her selfe : For shee was not only content to fortifie stronge holdes, and encourage her followers with comfortable speeches, but shee also put on armor her selfe, and attended with a troupe of horse, came into the open field and prouoked her enemye. Moreouer being besieged in a certaine Castle and put to great distresse, when for the most part all that were about her perswaded to yeeld, shee alone (amongst men) persisted in opinion to the contrarie, and with this resolution held it

*The gallant  
carriage and  
warlike beha-  
viour of the  
Lady Mount-  
fort.*

out so long till at last the English forces which had wandered a great while vppon the Seas, arriued to her rescue.

A certaine French captaine called *Lewis of Spaine*, tooke the Citie of *Dinant* in *Britaine* by composition, the Citizens hauing slaine their gouernour in the market place, because he refused to yeeld it. Another Citie neere adioyning named *Gerand*, was taken by the same Captaine by force; where not so much as Children and little infants, nor the Temples consecrated to Gods seruice, could escape the vttermost rigour of warre, but were all destroyed with fire and Sword. The Duke was much displeased with this impious cruelty, and worthylie caused the authors of such wickednesse to be hanged. He also receiued the citie of *Vannes* vppon composition without consent of the captaine, and many other places besides. To be short, diuerse encounters passed both by Sea and Land with variable fortune on both sides. A towne and Castle in those partes called *Hamibout*, was assaulted with great violence, but defended with more valour, for therin at that time remained the Duchesse of *Britaine* whome wee spake of before. The French men perceiuing they spent their time in vaine, and that Winter began to approach, perswaded *Charles of Bloys* to dismisse his Armie, and withall to take a truce, and place his souldiers in Garrison. It was so done, and the Duchesse sayled ouer to the King of *England*, who sent an Armie into *Britaine* against the French men.

About this time, the noble men of *England* counselled their King to take a stedfast truce with the Scottes for three yeeres space if it might be: shewing how great a burthen it would be to him to supporte so huge a charged of wars round about him, in *Scotland* on the one side, in *Fraunce* on the other. Herevppon Ambassadors were sent to the Scottish King, but nothing could be effected, for he would determine vppon nothing without the French kings counsell. The King of *England* mooued therewithall, rayfed a

mightie



mightie power in purpose to bring the Scottes to viter subuersion. But in the meane time, by the mediation of good men a truce was obtained & stablished. The English Armie which we spake of erewhile, met with the French kings fleete well appointed, vppon the coast of *Britaine*. There they encountred one another and continued in fight till within the euening. Somewhat before midnight there arose a very dangerous tempest, which scattered them in such sort, that they were separated more then an hundred miles asunder. In this conflict also, the Countesse of *Mountfort* her selfe performed knightly seruice. At length the English men recouered a haven not farre from the City of *Vannes*, at that time in possession of the French men, where putting on land their forces, they valiantly approached the Citie. And in conclusion diuiding their army into three partes, with two of them they fiercely assaulted the town in two seuerall places in the night season, and whilst the al men resorted thither to make resistance, they brought the rest of their forces to a place vnfortified and so entred the towne, putting all that were in it eyther to the Sword or to flight.

*Vannes* wōne  
by the Eng-  
lish.

There were two French Lords which had the custody of this towne, whome it full sorely greeued to see the Citie thus taken, Therefore assembling such forces as they could rayse vppon the suddaine, they gaue a fresh assault to the towne and so surprised it agine from the enemy. In these conflicts *Robert of Artoys* admirall of the English fleete, and Generall of the warre, was wounded: who being conueyed to *London* for the cure of his hurts, in short space after there ended his life. Whereat the king of *England* conceiued so great greefe and displeasure, that of purpose to reuenge the death of so worthy a man, so decreely esteemed, he himselfe sailed ouer with a mighty power of shipping into *Britaine*.

Recouered a-  
gaine by the  
French.

The death of  
*Robert of Ar-*  
*toys*.

So great was the number of the English forces, that at one instant they besieged three of the most puissant Cities

in all that countrey *Renes*, *Vannes*, and *Nants*, where *Charles* of *Blois* with his wife at the same time remained; besides the towne of *Dinant* which they tooke by force.

1343.

A truce for  
three yeares.

*Charles* of *Blois* wrote to the French King concerning the state of his affaires, the arriual of the English, the besieging of his townes : earnestly requiring that he would succour him in this great distresse. The French King sent his sonne the Duke of *Normandy* : who with an Armie of some forty thousand, tooke his way directly towards *Vannes* at that time very streytly besieged by the English. And had not the winter season brought great impediment to their purpose, it had surelie come to a field battell. But at length through the intercession of twoo Cardinals sent from Pope *Clement*, a truce was agreed vpon for three yeares, and a solemne othe taken of the Princes for the due obseruation thereof in the meane space. So the King of *England* returned into his owne countrey.

Whilst the warres were yet open, the Englishmen had laid siege to the Citie of *Vannes* latelie before recovered by the French : and it was stoutly defended by twoo noble men, the one called Lord *Cliffon*, the other *Henrie* of *Lyon*. It was these mens fortune in a certaine light skirmish to be taken prisoners by the English : and because there was a Lord of *England* also remaining among the French, vpon conclusion of the truce, communication was had for the exchange of prisoners. The King of *England* for the redeeming of his, deliuered to the French men the Lord *Cliffon*, detayning the other still prisoner. Herevpon as is most likely, some emulous obseruers of *Cliffons* cariage, raysed a suspition that he should be secretly affected to the English, and that for this respect, he rather then the other obtained his libertie. To be short, this ieaousie encreased so farre, that he lost his head for it at *Paris*. And for the like cause diuers other noble men suffered the like punishment. Sure it was a lamentable spectacle, especially considering that *Cliffon* in the recouerie of *Vannes*

from

from the English, had so honourable performed the office both of an excellent Captaine and valiant souldier.

This act of the French kings was taken in so ill part by the King of England (esteeming it done in his reproch) that he commaunded *Henrie of Lyon* to be presently set at libertie, and freely forgave him his raunsome : onelie enioyning him at his returne to signifie to the French King, how he interpreted these proceedings no otherwise then as intended to his dishonour, and that thereby he held the late truce to be violated : wherefore he should expect no other from him but as an enemy. This message was delivered to the French King, and the King of England sent an armie into *Aquitane*, with certaine other forces to succour the Lady *Mountfort*.

The Englishmen were entertained with great applause at *Bayon* and *Burdeaux*. Afterward laying siege to *Bergerat*, a towne neere the riuer *Gerond*, they received the townsmen to mercy, the English Captaine taking their othe of fidelitie in the name of the King his Master. They tooke many other places also partly by composition, partlie by force of armes. Amongst other they wonne the Castle of *Auberoch*, a place notably fortified, and leauing there a Garrison to defend it, the English Captaine returned againe with the rest of his army to *Burdeaux*. In the meane while the French men to the number of twelue thousand, besieged the same Castle againe verie streytly and put the souldiers there in Garrison to great distresse. But the English Captaine at *Burdeaux* hauing intelligence thereof, assembled some nine hundreth men, and in an euening, when the French men were to supperward, brake suddainelic out of a wood and charged so resolutely vpon them, that he put them to discomfiture, and in the chace tooke diuers prisoners, their Captaine for one, being sore wounded, whome the people in those partes had in such estimation, as if he had beene a Prince.

*Bayon & Burdeaux* receaued the English.

As the English men lay in leaguer before a certaine Castle,



tle, the souldiers put their Captaine in holde because he refused to yeeld it vp to the enemy, and would by no meanes graunt his liberty, but vppon consent to their request. In the end he consented, and afterward comming to *Tholouse*, was there arraigned of treason, and hanged vppon a gibbet for his labour. The towne of *Rioll* was likewise rendered into the Englishmens handes, but the Castle was still maintained by the Captaine. The Englishmen therefore drew a mine, & ouerthrew a great part of it to the ground: then the captaine considering his imminent perill, abandoned the place and left the Castle to the English. They also receiued *Angolesme* by composition, after a moneths respite which the townsmen had requested vppon hope to be releued in the meane time by the French King.

It is formerly tolde you of *Iaques de Artenill* how he was growne so great among the Flemmings, that the Earle himselfe could haue no safe recourse into his own country. But at length hee receiued the iuste reward of a seditious rebell. He had giuen great hope to the King of *England*, that hee would procure the whole countrey of *Flaunders* by generall consent to accept him for their soweraigne. And for accomplishment hereof the King of *England* with a well furnished nauie arriued in the hauen of *Flaunders*. The matter was propounded to the commons, and all for the most part seemed well affected to the King of *England*. But the *Gauntoys* tooke this practise in meruailous ill part, and when *Iaques* returned into the Citie, they entertained him nothing so kindly as they were wont, but besetting the house where he was, brake open the dores vppon him, and slew him as he thought to haue escaped at a posterne. Amongst other Articles wherewith they charged him, this also was a principall point, that he had priuately conueyed all the common treasure ouer to the King of *England*. The Earle of *Flaunders* moreouer had but one onelie sonne.

The death of  
*Iaques de Ar-*  
*tenill.*

About the same time, *William* Earle of *Henault* sayling

wi

with great assistance into *Friseland* (pretending himselfe to be rightfull Lord of that country) was himselfe there slaine in battell with diuers of his nobilitie. After his death, *Margaret* Princess of *Henault* and wife to *Lewis* of *Bavier* the Emperour, tooke possession of this Earldome. The French King was very desirous to draw vnto his partie one Sir *John* of *Henault*, a worthy Gentleman and a gallant souldier, who had formerly done great seruice to the King of *England*. The matter was attempted by diuers meanes, and when no other would take effect, this devise was put in practise : to insinuate into his conceit, that the King of *England* had a purpose to withdrawe from him, his pensions and yeerely entertainments. He gaue such credit to this report, that forthwith he wholly estranged himselfe from the King of *England*, and yeelded his seruice to the French King.

When the French King vnderstood that the Englishmen wasted *Aquitaine*, and had wonne many townes and fortresses there, he leuied his forces, amounting to the number of an hundred thousand men. Ouer this armie he appointed his Sonne *John* Duke of *Normandy* to be Lieutenant Generall. To the French kings ayde came *Odet* Duke of *Burgundy*, with his Sonne *Phillip* Earle of *Artoys* and *Boloine*, both of them excellently well accomplished for the warr. They recouered the towne of *Angolessme*, & laid siege to the castle of *Aguillion*, gotten before by the Englishmen vppon composition, then which there was not a stronger nor better fortified in those quarters. The winning thereof was by sundry meanes attempted. But it is incredible to belecue, with what courage and resolution the Englishmen that laye there in Garrison defended themselves. The French King being aduertised thereof, and demanded what his pleasure was to be done in the matter, returned answere to his Sonne that he should continue his siege till necessitie of hunger constrained them to yeeld.

Valiant resistance made by the English in the Castle of *Aguillion*.

The King of *England* vnderstanding in what distresse his men were, rayfed incontinently a power of fourteen thousand souldiers. He was accompanied amongst other with his Son *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, and a certain French Gentleman called *Godfrey* of *Harecourt*, who being expelled his country by the French King, fled to the King of *England* for safegard of himselfe, and reuenge of his iniuries: for the French King had seized vpon all his possessions. This *Godfrey* was the cause that the King of *England* directed his course into *Normandy*, being otherwise purposed to sayle into *Aquitaine*. He diuided his Armie into three partes, whereof two raunged along the sea coast, wasting the fields, sacking diuers townes, and leading away their prisoners, least afterward they might gather to a head and worke them some displeasure. The third wherein was the King himselfe, marched through the maine land, making hauocke of all things, and euery night they mette all together againe at the kings campe.

The French King in the meane time caused such an armie to be raised, as a more puissant had not beene scene in *Fraunce* of many yeeres. Letters were also addressed to the King of *Bohemia* for ayde, who at that time highly fauoured the French King. The Englishmen tooke a very rich towne in *Normandy* called *Saint Lupes*, and afterward hastened to the siege of another much richer called *Caë*, borrowing that name of the riuer running by it. The townsmen were purposed to haue giuen battell to the Englishmen in the field: but being people vnexperienced in armes, at the first sight of the enemy, they fled backe again into the towne. The French captaines had betaken themselves to their fortresses, but beholding the huge slaughter made in the Citie (for the Englishmen had taken it) they yeelded. Amongst other prisoners the Constable was one, whome with the rest which were taken in his company, the King of *England* afterwards bought of him that took them for twentie thousand crownes. The Englishmen  
marching

*Caen in Normandy* wonne by the English.



Marching still forward, passed ouer the riuer *Seane* towards *Roane*, and their light horsmen scoured the country euen vnto the Suburbes of *Paris*: where encountering the townsmen of *Amience* well appointed, posting towardes *Paris* vppon commaundement from the King, because of long time before they had been charged with no seruice for the warres, they set sicrcely vpon them, and bereft them of their carriage.

The French King in the meane while (notwithstanding the Parisians earnest sute to the contrary) departed from *Paris* to *Saint Dennis*, whither as then the rest of the Peeres were assembled. From thence pursuing his enemy with a certaine vehement and wonderfull desire to fight, he removed to *Amience*. The King of *England* assayed to passe his armie ouer the riuer *Some*, but there was neither foord knowne, nor bridge possible to be taken, they were all so surely garded by the French men. At length after proclamation of enlargement and reward to any French prisoner that should performe it, a certaine young man taken by chaunce, discovered a forde. The French men suspecting they would passe ouer at the same place, opposed themselves strongly against them, and entertained them in the riuer with a sharpe skirmish. Neuertheless the Englishmen waded through and put them to flight. By this time the French King was come to *Abbeville*, and the King of *England* wayted for him in the plaine fieldes, to giue him battell.

The battell  
of *Blanche-  
taque*.

When the time of battell approached, the King of *England* made his prayers to God to send him an happy victory, and diuided his wholly Armie into three parts. In the vauntgarde was his Sonne, in the reregard himselfe. The fight was furious on both sides, but at length the Englishmen obtained the victory, which may seem a wonder considering the huge multitude of their enemies. In this battell the King of *England* (who awaiting oportunitie, had not yet put himselfe in preasse) being aduertised that his

The memo-  
rable battell  
and victory of  
King *Edward*  
at *Cressy*.

Sonne fighting valiantly in the forefront, was wellnigh oppressed by the enemy, he made answer to the messengers in this sort : Demaunde no helpe of me this day so long as my Son liueth : For I will that he now shewe some prooffe of his valor, and that the honour of the victory be wholly his and theirs that are appointed to attend him. In this battell was slaine *Henrie of Lutzenburge* Father to *Charles King of Bohemia*, who although he were blinde, would needes adventure against the enemy notwithstanding. Towards night the French King accompanied with very fewe, withdrew himselfe out of the field. The King of *England* caused the dead bodies of the French men to be numbred, and there were found slaine, eleven Princes, fourescore Barons, twelue hundreth Knights, and about thirtie thousand others. By commaundement from the King, all the noble men were buried in the villages neere adioyning, and three daies truce was graunted to giue buriall to their dead.

*Calice* besieged.

After the King of *England* had obtained this notable victorie, he tooke his way directly towards *Calice*, and environning the towne with a stronge siege, there planted himselfe, in purpose not to depart before he had constrained them to yeelde for famine. Meane while the French King sent word to his Sonne the Duke of *Normandy*, lying still at the siege of *Aguillon*, that he should giue ouer his enterprize, and conuey his forces againe into *Fraunce*, to withstand the English men who subdued all things before them as they passed. Before this aduertisement came to the Army, there was another battell fought betweene the French and the English : wherein was present *Phillip* son to the Duke of *Burgundy*, who falling with his horse soone after departed this life. During the siege of *Aguillon* (wherof an English Baron was captaine) the Earle of *Derbie* whome the King of *England* had before sent into *Aquitaine*, remayning at *Burdeaux*. Assoone as he vnderstood that the siege was raysed and the Duke of *Normandy* departed,

parted, he assembled to the number of six thousand men, and raunging through a great part of the countrie thereabouts, at length tooke *Poitiers* by assault, and then returning againe to *Burdeaux*, dismissed his souldiers, leauing no Garrison in *Poitiers*, because the towne was vtterlie rased.

Whilste the King of *England* was busied about the siege of *Calice*, *David* King of *Scottes* (partly of his owne motion, partly by procurement of the French King) perswading himselfe that all the souldiers of *England* or at leastwise the greater part were gone a warfare with their King, assembled his forces to the number of fortie thousand or thereabout, and invaded *England*. The Queene of *England* in the mean time behaved her selfe with great courage and discretion, consulting with the Lords and Prelates of her Realme, about the direction of her affaires. So an armie was levied vpon the suddaine, and the enimie fiercely encountred certaine Archbishops and Bishops of *England* being present in the conflict : whose power notwithstanding it were farre inferiour in number to the *Scottes*, yet they obtained the victorie. In this battell the Scottish King himselfe with many others, were taken prisoners. The number of them that were slaine, amounted to fiftene thousand, the rest saued themselues by flight. After the accomplishment of this honourable victorie, the Queene of *England* crossed the seas and went to visite the King her husband.

*David* King  
of *Scottes* taken  
prisoner.

In the battell before mentioned, amongst others was also slaine the Earle of *Flanders*, who by reason of the rebellion of *Iaques de Artevill*, was compelled to put himselfe into the French Kings protection. He left a Sonne named *Lewis* at that time about fiftene yeeres of age. Now the King of *England* was in great expectation, that through the politicke assistance of *Iaques de Artevill*, he should haue brought the Flemmings to receiue him for their soveraigne, and that his Sonne the Prince of *Wales*

The battell  
of *Cresy*.



with their generall acceptance, should haue obtained the Lordship of all *Flanders*. But the author of so wicked a deuise was slaine as is already declared : for the Flemmings would not disinherit the Son of their Lord, though they loued not his Father. The King of *England* therefore began to treat of a marriage betweene the young Earle, who was then remaining in the French Court (for he fled thither with his Father at such time as the state grew troublesome in *Flanders*) and a daughter of his named *Isabell*. Against this match the Duke of *Brabant* opposed himself, for he also had a daughter at the same time whom he desired to match with the young Earle. Meanes were found by the Flemmings to conuey the Earle from the French King, and he returned into *Flanders* in hope to recover his Fathers possession. The King of *England* in the meane while was nothing slacke in soliciting his sute with the Lordes of *Flanders*. By them the matter was mooued and the match profered to young *Lewis*. But he vtterly refused it, protesting that he would neuer marrie the daughter of him that had slaine his Father. When the counsellors of *Flanders* sawe him so resolute in this opinion and that he would giue them none other answer, they committed him to safe custody, and would graunt no enlargement, but vpon condition that he should be ruled by the aduise of his elders. So at length he was perswaded, and the King of *England* with the Earles wife that should be, the Lordes of *Flanders*, and himsele, mette together at a day appointed. There the matter was debated, the Earle consented, was forthwith contracted, and after returned into *Flanders*, where he was nothing so straightly lookt vnto as he had beene. A little before the nuptials should be solcmnized, he tooke occasion accompanied with a small traine, to ride a hawking, where pretending great earnestnesse in following a Faulcon, which he had let flye at the heron, by little and little he ourstripped the rest of his companie, till at last he lost sight of them all, and so escaped

escaped againe to the French King.

Whilst the King of *England* besieged *Calice*, the truce which we told you was concluded by certaine Cardinals between *Charles* of *Blois* and the Countesse of *Mounifort* expired, by occasion whereof the warres were renewed againe afresh. The King of *England* sent a competent crew of horsemen out of the army which besieged *Calice*, to succour the Lady *Mounifort*. Certaine Englishmen were straightly environed by *Charles* of *Blois* in a towne & castle which they had taken immediatly before: But certain other Englishmen sent suddainly from the Countesse in the dawning of the day, brake vnlookt for into the campe of the French men (who by reason of a little good fortune in a certaine skirmish the day before, lookt negligently to their watch) and putting a great part of them to the sword, tooke also the Lord *Charles* of *Blois* himselfe prisoner.

*Charles of Blois taken prisoner.*

In the meane time the King of *England* pressed the town of *Calice* with great vehemency, and the French King intending to raise his siege, levied a mighty army. Whereof the King of *England* hauing aduertisement, so fortified all places, by which the French men might haue any accessse as well by the sea coast as the maine land, that they could not possibly make any approche to disturbe him. The French King seeing all entrance already foreclosed, required the King of *England* to giue him battell. But the King of *England* considering how he had spent welnigh a whole yeere in the siege of this Citie, and withall consumed a great treasure about it, thought it good policy to hold his advantage. The same time also two Cardinals sent from Pope *Clement* to endeuour an accord betweene the Princes, had three dayes communication with the Lords that were appointed Commissioners from both parties, but could effect nothing of their purpose. Wherevpon the French King presently after dissolued all his great army. The *Calicians* seeing themselves depriued both of present ayde and future expectatiō, began to parly of giuing vp the town. But  
the

the King of *England* would accept no other condition but one, which was to put themselves, life, and goods absolutely into his power, and to remaine wholly at his disposition. His counsell earnestly dissuading him from this obstinate resolution, as a thing tending to very ill example, at length the matter was brought to this issue: that six of the principall citizens, bareheaded and barefooted, with halters about their necks, and the keyes of the towne in their hands, should present themselves before him to be disposed of at his pleasure. The report of those tydings, suddenly moued great mourning and lamentation in the citie. In which sorrowfull confusion, when one not of the meaner ranke had protested openly that he would not shunne death in the behalfe of his country, now almost pined with hunger, his example soone after drewe fine more to the like affection.

*Calice* yeelded  
to King *Edward*.

These men being publicly brought forth in such manner as he appointed who had now iurisdiction over their liues, and by his commaundement adiudged to dye: when all the Noble men had made intercession in vaine, the Queene at length after many reasons alledged for her purpose, with much entreatie obtained their pardon. Then were some sent to take possession of the towne, and by authority from the King all the old Inhabitants were removed, and the Citie new peopled with English. After this, by meanes of a certaine Cardinall, a truce was taken for two yeares.

The King of *England* entrusted the gouernment of *Calice* to a certaine Italian. Not long after, a French Lord that laye in Garrison at *Saint Omers*, knowing the nature of the Italians to be aboue all other people couetous of golde, practised priuately with this fellow, to sell him the Castle for twenty thousand Crownes. The King of *England*, I know not by what meanes, hauing intelligence hereof, dissembled his knowledge, and sending for the Italian, examined him of the matter. Who seeing no other remedie,



dy confessed the truth, and besought him of pardon. The King graunted, and at his departure gaue him in charge to proceede with his proiect. A day before this practise should be put in execution, the King himselfe strongly guarded, as couertly as might be entered into *Calice*. The french man who had payd his money down, and knew nothing that the plot was discouered, sent his men of armes before to take the Castle. Assoone as they came in, not suspecting any such matter, they were presently attached and made prisoners to the English. Then in the dawning of the day the King of *England* issuing out of the Citie, charged suddainly vpon the rest of the French men which ho-uered thereabout to see the successe of their enterprife, and put them to flight, taking many prisoners, and amongst others the same person that was the first contriuer of this treason.

About this time King *Phillip* of *Valois* married another wife, the daughter of *Phillip* King of *Navarre* : and almost at the same instant *John* his eldest Son tooke to wife *Ioane* Duchesse of *Boloine*, late wife to the Duke of *Burgundies* Sonne, the same that at the siege of *Aguillion* ended his life, in the yere of our Lord 1346.

After the deceale of King *Phillip*, *John* his Sonne succeeded in his stead, who not long after his coronation ar-  
1346.  
*Phillip* of *Val-*  
*loys* dieth, and  
*John* his Son  
succeedeth.
rained the Constable (then newlie deliuered out of prison in *England*) of treason, and caused him to be beheaded at *Paris*.

## *John the son of Phillip de Valoys.*

Shortly after the coronation of King *John*, Pope *Clement* departed out of this life at *Avinon*. He appointed for his successour in the papacy, the Cardinall of *Ostia* a French man borne, called before his election *Stephen Albert*,

*bert*, but afterward named Innocent the sixt. By occasion of certaine disgracefull speeches mutually enterchanged, a mortall quarrell was growne berwixt the King of *Bohemia* and the Duke of *Lancaster*, which they were at point to decide by single combate : but the French King interposing himselfe, by his mediation the matter was compounded. After the Constable as we tolde you, was by the kings commandement put to death, *Charles* of *Spaine*, vpon whome the King had bestowed the seigniory of *Angolessme*, & who had also espoused the daughter of *Charles* of *Bloys*, being aduanced to that office, was by *Charles* king of *Navarre* slaine suddainlie in his bed. With this fact, as ye may well iudge, the French kings mind was not a little troubled, neuerthelesse vpon certaine conditions he was pacified. To this *Charles* thus murdered succeeded *Iaquet* of *Burbon*. And the truce taken between the French king and the English to endure till Aprill, was prolonged to Midsummer. For the ambassadours of both kings meeting at *Avinion* before the Pope, when they could not agree vpon articles of peace, added so much more time to the continuance of the truce.

The Prince of *Wales* brought an army into *Aquitaine*, and the King his Father intending to prosecute his warres in *Fraunce*, came to *Calice*. There the French King by an herald profered the single combate, but the King of *England* refused it. The French King sending out his writtes, summoned to *Paris* all his nobilitie, with the heads of the church and the burgeses of his townes, declaring vnto them how greatly it imported him to prouide for the warres. So by act of Parliament a generall subsidy was graunted, from payment whereof there was no man could be exempted.

The King of *Navarre*, *Iohn* Earle of *Harecourt*, and diuers others, being surprised by the French kings vn suspected approche, as they sat at dinner in the Castle of *Roan*, were suddainly apprehended and committed to safe custody.

dy. The King of *Navarre* was sent prisoner to *Paris*. The Earle of *Harecourt* had vttered I wot not what reprochfull words against the King, in presence of diuers noble men, stoutly maintaining that the subsidy lately exacted, ought not to be payd, and withall exhorting the residue to stand stiffly in deniall thereof. Hence grew the ground of his inditement, and hence proceeded the cause of his punishment. For herevpon the King commaunded him to be beheaded, and his body afterward to be hanged vpon a gibbet.

The King of *Englands* Sonne who came lately (as we *Edward* the told you) into *Aquitaine*, setting forth from *Burdeaux*, wa-black Prince, fled all the country thereabout, namely *Poytiers*, *Turon*, and *Berie*; where furnishing himselfe with what was needfull for his owne vse, therest he vtterly spoyled and destroyed, burning vp their corne, and shedding out their wines to the intent that afterwards it might not be couerted to the benefite of his enemy. The French King in the meane while hauing a great power assembled at *Chartres*, departed from thence, with all possible hast, and a rightemie-like affection following after the English Prince. When he came neere vnto *Poytiers*, newes was brought him that the English armie laie encamped not farre off. Immediatlie herevpon calling his counsell, he gaue direction for the setting of his men in order, disposing his whole armie into three battalions. In the first he placed the Duke of *Orleans*, in the second *Charles* his eldest Son, and himselfe led the reregard. The number of his enemies was very small. Assoone as he vnderstood by his scowts in what sort they were embattelled, and how they had planted themselues in a place both by nature and their owne industrie stronglie fortified, he gaue commaundement that all his people should fight on foote, three hundredth or somewhat more onlie excepted, who with their horses were appointed to breake the aray of the english archers. He was accompanied in the field with his foure



Sonnes, *Charles*, *Lewis*, *John*, and *Phillip*. These at such time as the battell went against them, and that victorie began to incline to the english, were conuied further off into places of safetie.

Pope *Innocent* that succeeded *Clement*, had sent two Cardinals into the field, to treat for peace at the same time that both armies stood one against another readie to encounter. The matter was diuersly debated: and the french King seemed to stand vpon somewhat too hard conditions. One of the Cardinals laboured very earnestlie for an agreement, but receiuing a message from the King that he should not presume to make any further mention of peace vpon perill of his life, he departed. Then came the matter to be determined by hand-strokes, and the battell was exceeding cruell, and fortune waueing for a while, seemed sometimes to affect the one part, sometimes the other. But the english archers, then if euer, performed gallant seruice, with force and courage altogether invincible: insomuch that by their onlie prowess the puissance of the enemy was wholie broken, and that day so notable a victorie obtained by a handfull of men, as I know not whether any age heretofore may boast of a more honourable president. To let passe the number of those that were slaine, amongst whome were many persons of great account, the King himselfe was taken prisoner, with *Phillip* his youngest Sonne, whome he would needs haue neere him when he went to battell. And seeing the kings fortune now was such, the condition of the meaner sort is easie to be imagined. Prince *Edward* led the King prisoner with him to *Burdeaux*.

Whilst these things were donne about *Poytiers*, the brother of the King of *Navarre* which was imprisoned as we told you at *Paris*, hauing much augmented his forces with forreine assistance, greatly afflicted *Normandy* with incursions and robberies.

The States of *France*, for that their King was now in the hands

The battell of  
*Poitiers* which  
was fought  
the 22. day of  
September.  
1357.

King *John* taken prisoner.  
The English  
men tooke  
more prisoners  
in this  
battell, then  
they were  
them selues in  
number.  
See *Froß*.  
*Chro. Lib. 1.*  
*Cap.*

hands of his enemies, & his sonnes in regard of their yong yeeres as yet vnable to mannage the affaires of the kingdom, assembled together at *Paris* to take counsell among themselves for the defence of their countrey. Out of this whole number, six and thirtie were chosen, to whom the administration of the commonwealth was committed till such time as the king should againe recouer his liberty. About the beginning of the next spring, Prince *Edward* crossing the Seas, carried the French king & his sonne with him into *England*. But a truce was first graunted by intercession of the Cardinals, who laboured very effectually also for the conclusion of a peace betweene the King of *England*, and the King of *Scotland*, in which worke of pietie they were charitably assisted to the obtainement of their purpose, by the Bishop of *S. Andrewes* in *Scotland*. So at length vpon certain conditions, a peace was confirmed, & *Dauid* the Scottish king after he had remained 9 yeares in *England*, was set at libertie & returned again into his own country.

All the nobilitie and principall citizens of *Fraunce* were for the most parte very desirous that the King of *Navarre* (lately remoued from *Paris* into *Picardy*) might be released of his imprisonment: insomuch that the matter was motioned by the States themselves to *Charles* the Kings sonne. He, for that he was ignorant of the causes why his father committed him, would not presume to determine any thing in the matter. At length through the helpe of some which by straunge subtilties were receiued into the Castle where he was kept prisoner, he escaped and came to *Paris*. There in open audience of the people he declared his loue and good affection towards his countrey, expressing it in such sorte that a great number of them were more enclyned to him, then to the Duke of *Normandie*. But especially about others he was faouored by the Prouost of *Paris*, a man of no small authoritie in that cittie.

Whilst the French king remained prisoner with his enemy, there was marvellous confusion and trouble in his realme, The miseries of *Fraunce*,

during their  
Kings capti-  
uitie.

realme, with great impunitie of vice, as generally happeneth in such cases, where scarce any are thought to remain which by authoritie might repress mischief & punish offenders. Theeves and robbers banding themselves together, filled the country with repine and murder, forestalling the highwaies, and spoyling the passengers. Besides this the States could not well agree among themselves, for the nobilitie began to distaste the authoritie of the six and thirty which were appointed to haue cheife rule in the common wealth. But most horrible of all other, was that tumultuous insurrection of the peasants which assembled in Champagne and the places thereabout, whose companie by little and little augmenting through the daily concourse of such rascals as resorted to them from all quarters, at length increased so farre, that their number amounted to an hundred thousand. Their purpose was to haue destroyed all the nobilitie and gentry of *Franchee*. And with this intentring violently into the noble men and gentlemens houses, they rifled them, bound the Maisters to the postes, & rauished their wiues and daughters before their faces, murdered cruelly all the whole houshoulde, and lastly consumed the houses with fire. And now their barbarous outrage preuayling so farre, that the women of greatest calling were compelled to forsake their dwellings and hide themselves in secret places, vnlesse they would abandon their bodies to the beastly lust of most filthy varlets, an army at length was raised, and at the towne of *Meaux* they were fought withall, and euerie one slaine or drowned in the river *Marne*.

*Charles* the kings sonne, perceiuing there was a secret conspiracie betweene the King of *Navarre* and the Prouost of *Paris*, departed out of the towne, and assembled his forces. It seemed as if the matter would haue growne to a troublesome issue, for hee besieged the cittie, but by the mediation of certaine Bishops, the Princes were reconciled. The Prouost neuertheless intending to set all in a



vproare, had plotted one night to dispatch all those of the contrary faction. And the matter was brought to such forwardnesse, that he had already agreed with certaine (who for the same purpose awayted their prey without the gates) that at a time appointed in the night they should enter into the cittie. But the treason beeing discovered, hee himselfe was apprehended in the night season with the keyes of the towne in his hand, and so slaine with some others that were partakers of his practise. This Prouost (during the troublesome state of those times,) was the first that enclosed *Paris* with walles and ditches, and planted gates at the entrances into the cittie.

The King of *Navarre* beeing certified of this mans death, whome he dearely esteemed in regard of the manifold benefits he had receiued at his handes, and partly moued with displeasure of the matter, but more neerely touched, for that himselfe was commonly noted to be chiefe author of that practise, as well of his owne accord, as by instigation of his brother *Philip*, (who had formerly vexed *Normandy* with warres, & desired nothing more then to worke mischief to the realme of *Fraunce*) forthwith denounced warre, and hotly pursued it, making many excursions towards *Seane* and *Marne*, and winning also diuerse townes and fortresses about *Amience* & *Arras*. The Prouost had furnished him with great sommes of money, and therefore he might maintaine men of warre at his pleasure: besides, many fauoured his pretence and furthered his proceedings. Hereby it came to passe that oftentimes he tooke many townes and castles with little or no difficultie: insomuch that certaine of the principall townesmen of *Amience* at an houre agreed vpon in the night, set open the gates of the towne for his soldiers to enter, where then nothing else remained to winne but the castle. But by good fortune certaine french horsemen falling vpon them, disappoynted their purpose, putting the aduenteurs to flight, and the traytors to execution.

To-

Together with these euills (as is wonte to happen) ensued a wonderfull dearth and scarcitie of all things, in such sorte as the poorer people had much adoe to sustaine their liues: and this plague continued fower yeeres. For, so long as the insatiable soldiers deuoured all mens goods, of what estate or degree soeuer without controlment, so long the husbandman might not apply his labour in safetie, nor the merchant exercise his trafficke without extreme hazard both of life and goods: what other effect could ensue thereof, but a generall & common mischiefe, and such a one as should concerne euerie particular person?

A strange  
shift in extre-  
mitie.

Certaine of the king of *Navarres* people beeing vpon time surprisid by their enemies at some disaduantage, when they sawe that of necessity they must put their fortunes in tryall, though farre ouermatched in number, yet seeing no other remedy, they betooke themselues to a little hill, and putting off all their spurres, pitched them in the ground before the with the rowells vpward to hinder the approach of their enemies. But the euening came on so fast, that it stayed the frenchmen from the encounter. In the night time with great silence they conveyd themselues into the next village, and there making fires as if they had purposed to tarrie all night, they secretly departed contrarie to the frenchmens expectation, who pursued in vaine, but could not ouertake them. Amongst other places the *Navarrois* held *Melune* vpon *Seane*. To the besieging of this towne the Duke of *Normandy* sent foure thousand horsemen. But by mediation of the Cardinals which wee spake of before, a peace was concluded betweene them. But *Phillip* the King of *Navarres* brother would neuer giue his consent to any conditions of peace whatsoeuer, vpbraiding his brother that he was deluded with witchcraftes and enchauntments: and therefore he retired himselfe to certaine holdes vpon the Sea coast which were in the kingdome of *Englands* subiection.

By that time the peace was confirmed betweene the *Navarrois* and the Frenchmen, the three yeeres truce (obtained by the Cardinals after the taking of King *John*) betweene *Fraunce* and *England*, expired. Therefore all such as had serued vnder the King of *Navarre*, repayed to the English Captaines for entertainment, and so one mischiefe drew on many more successiuelly ensuing each other. Notwithstanding for that time, the Englishmen were but ill entreated by the French, though not without great damage to the poore wretches that inhabited in the vpland country, or in townes but weakly fortified. For the Englishmen accompanied with forreine souldiers, made spoyle of them at their pleasure.

When the time of truce (as wee said before) was worne out, the king of *England* and his eldest Sonne with the French King and the Duke of *Burbon*, conferred priuate-ly together at London concerning a peace, the articles whereof they sent ouer to the Duke of *Normandy*, and he propounded them to the three estates of the kingdome. But when the matter came to be debated in counsell, these conditions were vtterly disliked, and answere was giuen to the Ambassadors, that they would rather choose to endure yet greater miseries, then condescend to such articles. This answere was taken in very ill parte, as well by the captiue King of *Fraunce*, as by the King of *England*: who immediately thereupon caused such an armie to be lewyed, as neuer any man saw passe out of *England* before. Hee rooke landing at *Calice*, accompanied with his foure sons. But before his departure out of *England*, he made open declaration of his intent before the whole army: in effect, that he had vndertaken this expedition in hope and full purpose to enforce the French men to receiue such conditions as should be both for the honour of his person, the commoditie of his people, and the dignity of his crowne: And that he was resolued neuer to giue ouer, nor returne again, till such time as he had accomplished his affaires in such

Priuate conference about a peace.



forte as he desired. Wherefore if any man disliked his presence, hee should haue free liberty to depart, or tarrie. But there was none amongst them all which did not willingly embrace these conditions.

1359.

It should  
seeme to be  
but twenty  
thousand.

From *Calice* the King of *England* marched to *Rhemes*, which citie when he found for the bignesse thereof to be strongly fortifyed, he forbore to assault it, because he wold not rashly hazard the losse of any of his men whome he reserved for greater seruices. From thence after two moneths siege or somewhat more, he tooke his way into *Burgundy*. The Duke sent messengers to him, requesting that his souldiers might not be suffered to spoyle his country. The King of *England* beeing a very curteous Prince was easily entreated; but vpon cond tion that the Duke of *Burgundy* should pay him an hundreth thousand crownes. In the meane time *France* was miserably wasted, partly by the King of *England* himselte, partly by the rest of his army left in *Picardy*, and not a little by the King of *Navarre*, who yet againe moued armies against the Duke of *Normandy*.

*Iohannes Ro-*  
*sbetallada.*

A certaine fryer of the order of Saint *Frauncis*, prophesied at *Avinion* that both the Clergy should suffer much for their pride, couetousnesse and ambition, and that the kingdome of *France* should be extremely afflicted by the invasions of strangers, in so much that no part of it should be free from that miserie. The Pope because he foretolde matters that displeased him, cast this fryer in prison.

The King of *England* sent word to the Duke of *Normandy*, that he would giue him battell: but the Duke hauing no disposition to put himselte to the curtesie of Fortune, stayed still at *Paris*. And because he well perceiued, that the state could not long continue at this passe without the vtter subuersion and ouerthrowe of the kingdome: by aduise of his nobility & counsell, he sent ambassadors to the king of *England* to entreate of peace. The matter was diuersly attempted, but it seemed almost an impossibility to  
accord

accord their difference. For the King of *England* still absolutely maintayned, that the crowne of *Fraunce* was his rightfull inheritance.

Whilst things were thus in consultation, there suddainly rose a meruailous tempest about *Chartres*, the violence whereof was such, that it ouerthrew both men and horses. The king was so moued with the consideration hereof, that he made a vowe he would incline his minde vnto peace, & so at *Calice* the matter was concluded. The conditions were these: that the king of *England*, his heyres, and successours after him, should hold & enioy the Countyes, Cities, Castles, holds, Lordships, Isles, rents and revenues of all *Aquitaine*; also the Cittie, Castle, county and whole seignorie of *Poytiers*: the Cittie and castell of *Rochell*, and *Limoges* with all the country about it. To these were added, *Angoulesme*, aswell the towne as the castle, with all the territory thereto belonging: Also *Calice*, and many other places besides, whereof as the number is great, so the rehearsal would be tedious. Item, that the king of *Fraunce* should renounce his title to all these, and release all fealtrie and right, which he, his heires or successors might by any meanes clayme therein, & that the king of *England* should hold them all frankly and freely without acknowledgment of any homage or superiority to the king of *Fraunce* or his successors in that behalfe. Item, that the king of *England* should againe, for himselfe, his heires and successors, disclaime all title, right and interest, which eyther hee or his posteritie might pretend to the crowne of *France*. Item, that he should resigne all the portion which he challenged in the Dukedomes of *Normandy*, *Aniow* and *Turon*: also all his right to *Britaine*. These and many other articles, described more at large in my author, both the Kings and their sonnes were solemnly sworne to obserue. And for further assurance, the French King gaue in hostage, the Dukes of *Orleance*, *Aniow*, *Berry* & *Burbon*, besides some twelue Earles and Barons, and diuerse personages of good

King *Edward* inclineth to peace. 1360.  
Peace concluded, and King *John* set at liberty.

1360.

account sent particularly from all the chiefe Citties of *France*. These being all conveyed to *London*, the French king was set at libertie and returned againe to *Paris*, to the great reioycement of his subiects.

Immediately vpon his returne, he directed forth letters to all his officers, Lieutenants, and Captaines, to avoyd out of all such Townes, Castles and holds, as hee had departed withall to the King of *England*. But it is wonderfull to report, with what vnwillingnesse they all for the most part obeyed this commandement: for it seemed a very strange and difficult matter for them to vndergoe the yoke and subiection of the English. But the French King beeing a iust and vertuous Prince, would for no respect infringe his oath, or swarue from his covenants. Therefore he gaue commaund that all things should bee performed according to the expresse tenor of the agreement. In like manner the King of *England* sent commissioners to surrender againe certaine Castles and holdes taken in the warres into the French kings possession. When the townes and fortresses were in this sort delivered, the soldiers which had now accustomed themselues so long time together to liue vpon spoyle and pillage, considering that in regard of the wicked acts they had formerly committed, it would bee little for their profit, and lesse for their safetie to returne home againe, determined from thenceforth to seeke their fortunes. And thereupon assembling theniselves together, they ranged through *Champaine* and the places adioyning, wasting and destroying all things before them, and as it commonly falleth out, their number daily encreased. The French king beeing informed of their mischieuous proceedings, sent *Iaques of Burbon* against them with an armie. He found them encamped vpon a very high hill, the scituation wherof was such that it was impossible to take any perfect view of their forces: & being indeed some sixteen thousand, they appeared to his scouts not aboue 5000. When it came to the encounter, it was fiercely fought

on



on both sides, but fortune inclined to the worser party. many gallant gentlemen perished in this conflict: the Duke of *Burbon* himselfe with *Peter* his eldest Son were verie sore wounded, and being conveyed to *Lyons*, died within three daies after. When these villaines had obtained this victorie, they tooke their waie directly towards *Avinion*; at whose approche the Pope and his colledge of Cardinals were not a little affrighted, for such was both their courage and their crueltie, that no man durst oppose himselfe against them. Neuerthelesse the Pope and his Cardinalls being thus driuen to their shifts, and hauing no other meanes to repress this mutinous multitude, to whome no mischiefe came amisse, commaunded a croyse to be preached against them, with a graunt of cleere remission of all their sinnes which tooke it vpon them. Many assembled, but when there was no mention of pay, they shrunke away euery one. The very same time the *Marques* of *Mountferrat* made warre vpon the Duke of *Millaine*. The Pope therefore praised with him to lead away this rebellious rebell into *Lumbardie*. And euen so it fell out, for when the Pope and Cardinalls had paied them threescore thousand crownes, and that the *Marques* also had promised them entertainment besides, they followed him and did him good seruice in his warres.

The french King passed through the Dukedome of *Burgundy* (which was then lately fallen to him by the death of the younger Duke) towards *Avinion* to visite the Pope, who in short space after deceased. And when they could not determine vpon a new election (by reason of the inordinate strife which was chiefelie betweene twoo contending for the papacie) at length a certaine abbot of Saint *Victors* in *Marseilles*, a learned and godlie man, was chosen, and from thenceforth called Pope *Vrbane*. 1362.

The King of *Cyprus* the same time arriued at *Avinion*, and made earnest intercession to the Pope and the french King, for the vndertaking of an expedition against the

Saracens and other enemies of the christian faith. The Pope promised his furtherance, and in a publike assembly propounded the matter. Wherevpon the french King with a great part of his nobility, tooke vpon them the signe of the crosse. Afterward the King of *Ciprus* trauelled into *Bohemia* to the Emperour, and from thence through *Germanie*, *Brabant*, and *Flaunders*, he came into *England*, making the like petition to King *Edward*, but he honourably excused himselfe. Out of *England* he returned vnto *Arras* where the french King then sojourned: and after that he repaired into *Gascoine* to the Prince of *Wales*, who about the same time had a Son borne named *Edward*.

The noble men that were left in hostage for the french King, began to grow discontented for the long restraint of their liberty, and king *Edward* being of a gentle and courteous disposition, had giuen them leaue to go ouer to *Calis* as well to recreate and refresh their mindes, as also that from thence (being so neere *Fraunce*) they might the more commodiously dispose of their affaires in their owne country. They sent oftentimes to the King and the Duke of *Normandy* his Sonne. But the King was so busied about the preparation of his voyage against the Saracens & was all so troubled by the King of *Navarre*, who still continued in armes against him, that he could not conveniently intend to dispatch them. By meanes whereof, it came to passe that the Duke of *Aniow* the kings Sonne, leaving the rest of his fellow pledges, returned againe into *Fraunce*.

The french King had a mervailous desire to see the King of *England* againe, because he had so honourably entreated him whilst he was his prisoner. He was counselled to the contrary, notwithstanding he still persisted in his purpose, and so much the rather for that he would excuse his Sonne for departing without licence. So he went and was entertained very royally. But not long after he fell sicke and died at *London*. His body was conueied ouer into *Fraunce* and buried in the towne of *Saint Dennise*, the King of

The death of  
King John.

*prus* being present at his funeralles.

The King of *Navarre* thinking that occasion was now fitlie offered him to make warre, collected forces from all partes where he could raise them : and in *Normandy* a battell was fought with great fiercenesse and little advantage on both sides.

After the death of king *John*, his sonne *Charles* who was before stiled Duke of *Normandy*, succeeded in the inheritance of the kingdome, and was the same yeere crowned at *Reames*, together with his wife the daughter of *Peter* Duke of *Burbon*. At his coronation were present, the King of *Cyprus*, *Wenlaus* King of *Bohemia*, and the Dukes of *Lutemburge* and *Brabant*. When the solemnities were finished and the new King returned to *Paris*, he proclaimed his younger brother *Phillip*, (who had beene prisoner with his father in *England*) Duke of *Burgundy*, the same being formerly promised him by King *John* before his last going ouer into *England*.

---

*Charles the fift.*

---



As yet *Fraunce* was not throughly purged from the remnant of those rauinous cutthroates before mentioned : and in *Normandy* and the places thereabout, many taking part with the *Navarrois*, much afflicted the countrey. The ring-leader of these warres was *Lewis* of *Navarre*. King *Charles* appointed his brother *Phillip* (lately created Duke of *Burgundy*) to go against them, by whome all for the most part was againe recovered. About the same time the Earle



Earle of *Mountpelierde*, ayded by certaine *Germaines* his friends, entered into *Burgundy* not farre from *Besancon*, Incontinently the Duke repaired thither with his armie, but his enemies were retyred before his comming.

Amongst the Articles of peace betweene the kings of *England* and *France*, (whereof we haue giuen you a briefe abstract before,) the matters of *Britaine* were excepted and the kings had both promised to employ their mutual endeauours that the controuersie might be indifferently decyded. But the matter was very slightly handled, and it happened that King *John* dyed as is already declared. By meanes whereof the warres brake forth afresh, and the french King sent a thousand horse to the ayde of *Charles* of *Blois*, who vpon the delivery of his Sons in hostage was now released out of prison. On the other side, *John* Earle of *Mountfort* obtained succour partly from others but principally from the Englishmen, who at that time held the possession of *Aquitaine*. When their armies were brought into the field and ready to ioyne battell, a certain nobelman of *Britaine* (for whome it was not lawfull to beare armes because he was a prisoner) vndertooke to be a mediatour betwixt them, exhorting and humbly intreating them that they would accord friendly among themselves, and not suffer the matter to come to tryall of the sword. It was possible he might haue preuailed, but that certaine gentlemen secretly perswaded the Earle of *Mountfort* their generall, that he should not by any means come to composition with his enemy. For these men hauing already consumed the greatest part of their means now set vp their rest, eitherto recouer themselves againe by the wars, or to lose what remayned in the adventure of their fortunes. Thus battell was giuen, with much blood shed on both sides, but the Englishmens valour put the enemies to flight. *Charles* himselfe was slaine in the field, which many thought to be a matter plotted of purpose, because there was no other meanes to bring those warres to conclusion.

*Charles* of  
*Blois* slaine in  
battell.

conclusion. The Earle of *Mountfort* beholding his body deprived of life, could not refraine from teares notwithstanding he was hisemie.

When *Mountfort* had thus chased his enemies and gotten the victory, in short space after he recovered many townes of *Britaine*. The French King being advertised of the state of these affaires, sent his brother the Duke of *Anjou*, as well to comfort the late wife (now widdowe) of *Charles*, which remained exceeding sorrowfull and pen-sive, as also to animate and encourage their mindes which in her behalfe still maintained their garrisons. But a great part of *Britaine* being by this time brought vnder the sub-jection of *Mountfort*, the French King vppon further deli-beration with his counsell, sent ambassadours to him to treat of agreement. *Mountfort* referred his cause to the King of *England*, who not disliking the matter, he ac-cepted the conditions profered: which in substance were these. That *Mountfort* should hold all the Dukedome of *Britaine* during his life, and if it fortunied him to dye with-out issue, then the inheritance should againe returne to the Sonnes of *Charles*, which as we told you were the kept ho-stages in *England*. Item, that he should assure vnto the widdow of *Charles*, some Earledome in those parts, whose yeerely revenue should amount to twentie thousand frankes. Item, that at a time prescribed (being summo-ned by the french King) he should present himself in persō before him, to be by him invested in his Dukedome, and to performe all ceremonies vsually incident to that solem-nitie. And finally of his owne voluntary motion he promi-sed to employ his endeaour for the ransōming of his kins-men that remayned pledges in *England*.

About this time *Lewis* of *Navarre* went into *Italy* to be affianced to the Queene of *Naples* daughter. The French King lent him threescore thousand frankes for the furniture of his iourney, receyuing certaine Castles of his in pawne for the repayment of his money. When he had

almost brought his matters to effect at *Naples*, shortly after he ended his life.

After the warres of *Britaine* and *Navarre* were finished, euery place still swarmed with such curthrote souldiers as were accustomed to liue vppon pillage, and these mightilie plagued the countrey. The French King well considered that they must be either wholly subverted, or by some other meanes remooued out of the Realme. Therefore, the King of *Hungary* hauing wars at that time with the Turke, he would gladly haue conveyed them over to him as he requested : but the old souldiers to whome that countrey was not vnknowne, dissuaded their fellowes from vndertaking that voyage. Then another devise was contriued, and Pope *Urbane* lying at *Avinion*, furthered the french King in his purpose. For he also out of his good affection to *Fraunce* would willingly haue had that mischievous multitude dispatched out of the kingdomes. There reigned at that time in *Castile* a King called *Don Pietro*, a wicked person and a notable tyrant. For he not onely put to death diuerse good and vertuous persons, but murdered many also with his owne hands, and amongst others his owne wife, descended of the honourable house of *Burbon*. He cast the gouernors of the church in prison and seased all their goods into his owne possession. It was reported by his own familiar freinds, that he had conspired with the King of *Granado* the generall enemy of christendome. His father was King *Alphonso*, who falling in affection with another woman besides his wife, had by her three sonnes, the eldest whereof named *Henrie* was a man both of valiant courage and vertuous disposition. This tyrant in regard of the manifold crinies whereof he was often accused before the Pope, had already prouoked all mens hatred against him. Pope *Urbane* therefore vppon good consideration, sent for this bastard *Henrie*, and *Peter* King of *Arragon*, (who was at continuall enmity with the tyrant, as one that had bereft him of diuers Lordships) to

The occasion  
of Prince *Edward*  
wards expedition  
into *Spain*.

come



come before him at *Avinion*. There *Henrie* the bastard was made legitimate, and denounced King of *Castile*, the tyrant being first excommunicate, after despoised. The King of *Aragon* promised free passage through his country, and prouision of victualles, to such armies as should be conducted into *Castile* against the tyrant : intending also by the helpe of those forces to recouer his owne losses. To this expedition resorted many honourable personages: and by this meanes those souldiers that had so long annoyed the realme of *Fraunce*, were conveyed into *Castile*. The tyrant having intelligence of the armie that was comming against him, betooke himselfe to flight, with his wife, his two daughters, and one noble man onlie. For he was so hated of the commons, that not one of them would take armes in his defence : so he was forsaken and left destitute of all men. And *Henrie* the bastard arriving in *Castile* with great ioye and generall applause of the people, tooke vppon him the administration of the kingdome. After his coronation, when he had received the othe of allegiance from the most part of the Nobilitie, and Cities of the realme, the noble men by whose ayde he had obtained the crowne, tooke their leaues and departed : for now all seemed to be accomplished. But he had not yet discharged those french make-shiftes, because he purposed to make warre against the King of *Granada*.

The tyrant remaining in these perplexities, by the aduise of that one noble man which attended him, addressed letters to the Prince of *Wales*, full of lamentable complaints concerning his misfortunes, beseeching him to commiserate his estate and to releuee him with succor. Shortly after, he himselfe not daring to trust his owne subiects, repayed to *Byron*. The Princes counsell were of opinion that he ought not to be succoured in regard of his abhominable wickednesse and vngodly disposition, nor that any dangerous enterprife should be vndertaken for his sake. Contrarily the Prince iudged it an vnworthy thing

That a bastard Sonne should vsurpe the inheritance of the crowne, which was a very ill president and extended to the preiudice of other kings and princes. Therefore when the tyrant came he receiued him courteously into the towne of *Burdeaux*, and promised him his assistance. Neuertheless he sent into *England* to the King his Father, declaring to him the whole circumstance of the matter, and requiring his counsell and direction concerning his proceedings. The King of *England* in regard that of long time before, there had beene a league betweene the Spaniard and him, encouraged his Sonne (in the answer of his letters) to go forward with his purpose for the restoring of him to his kingdome. And so the iourney was resolved vpon betweene them. But one thing was an obstacle in the way : Their passage lay through the King of *Navarres* country, who had lately contracted amity with *Henrie* the newe King of *Spaine*. Howbeit matters were so handled, that a meeting was had at *Bayon*, and vpon certaine conditions the King of *Navarre* was so well satisfied, that he promised all curtesy, frendship, and peace. King *Henrie* being aduertised of these proceedings, sent to the King of *Fraunce* for ayd.

The Prince practised with the Captaines of those soldiers which before had been so troublesome to *Fraunce* & now tooke paye of the Spaniard, that they should forsake King *Henries* seruice, and follow him. There was about twelue thousand of them : and as they were marching towards *Gascoine*, in the kingdome of *Arragon* they endured great distresse, the wayes and passages being on all sides foreclosed and fortified. Neuertheles they made way through all inconveniences, and holding on their iourney till they came almost at *Tholous*, they were receiued into *Mount Albane*, a towne pertayning to the territory of *Guyen*. The french men vnderstanding thereof, besette the wayes rounde about that they might not issue forth into *Tholous*, or the places adioyning. In conclusion, it

came to hand-strokes : and the French men fought valiantly, insomuch that they chased their enemies euen vnto the towne : but by reason of the fresh supplies comming continually to their rescue, in the end the French men were ouerthrowne, and the greater part of them eyther slaine or taken prisoners. In which number was the Earle of *Provence*, who came at that time to ayde the men of *Tholons* : and besides him, diuerse others of great account both of *Provence* and *Fraunce*. Hauing thus cleared their passage by the sword, they proceeded to the end of their iourney.

The Earle of  
*Provence* taken prisoner.

The prince of *Wales* because he was loth to burden the people of *Aquitaine* with exactions for the maintenance of his soldiers, borrowed no small some of money of his father, & besides that conuerted all his plate both gold and siluer into coyne.

Many prisoners (as the custome is) were discharged vpon their worde; so was the Earle of *Provence*. But Pope *Urbane* for hatred he bare to those mutinous soldiers, took vppon him to acquite the Earle of *Provence* and others that were set at liberty after the same manner, from their ransoms : so that they payd not one farthing, but had a cleare dispensation from him of all bonds and obligations whatsoever.

Whilst the Prince was making preparation for the warres, there arived at *Burdeaux* the King of *Maiorica*, who made grievous complaint of the King of *Arragon*, which had slaine his father in prison at *Barcelone*, and withheld all his possessions from him by force : towards the reuenge of which iniuries and the recouerie of his inheritance he humbly implored the Princes ayd. He had to wife the Queene of *Naples*. The Prince vpon hearing of his complaint, promised that so soone as he had finished this enterprise for *Spaine*, he would vndertake his affaires, and so bring to passe that either vppon reasonable conditions, or by force of armes, he should be restored to his

The king of  
*Maiorica* craveth ayd of  
Prince *Edward*, and ob-  
taineth promise of the  
same.



kingdome.

The birth of King *Richard* borne, to whom the banished King of *Maiorica* was godfather. He was named *Richard*, and afterward came to be king of *England*, *Edward* the Princes elder sonne being dead before his father.

Prince *Edward* setteth forward on his iourney into *Spaine*.

In the beginning of Februarie the Prince departed from *Burdeaux*, and within a little while after, an vncertaine rumor was bruted abroad concerning the King of *Navarre* as if he had entred into a newe league with King *Henry* of *Castile*, and that therevpon the Prince and his Army should be denyed passage through his country. Herevpon letters were addressed to the King of *Navarre*, who aduisedly alleadging the reasons that moued him, withall declared his good affection to the Prince and the banished Tyrant. The Prince marched with his army in three battels, one following another, the vauntgard was conducted by the Duke of *Lancaster* sent lately from the King of *England* to assist him, the King of *Maiorica* had the leading of the reereward, and he himselfe accompanied with the tyrant marched in the maine battell. As they passed through *Navarre*, the King himselfe for their better direction became their guide, and bare them company through a great part of his country. At *Pampelone* also (which is the chiefe citie of *Navarre*,) he entertayned the Prince with a banquet. Many feared that the armies should haue been stayd as soone as they came within his kingdome, but contrary to their opinion, the King still persevered in peace and friendship.

King *Henry* hauing advertisement of the army coming against him out of *Aquitaine*, lewyed forces in *Spaine* to the number of threescore thousand fighting men. For he was exceedingly beloued, and every man was willing to vndergo any danger for his sake. Thē he sent an herault with letters to the Prince, desiring to know what the reason was that he vndertooke these warres against him, seing

that for his parte he had neuer offered him any manner of offence or iniury. The Prince vpon deliberation with his counsell detained the messenger, and marching still forwards, arriued at a towne called *Victoria*, nere vnto which, both himselfe and his aduersarie encamped with their armies. The king of *Spaine* had three thousand soldiers sent to his ayd out of *Fraunce*.

The Englishmen had planted themselves vpon a hill. Counsell was giuen to the *Spaniard* that if he purposed to winne the victorie without slaughter and bloudshed, he should need to take no other course, but only to shutte vp the wayes that no prouision of victuall might be conveyd to his enemie. For the Englishmen were enclosed as in a streight, & with small labour all passage might easily haue bene intercepted: But the King of *Spaine* desirous to fight, in regard of the greatnesse of his forces which were now growne to aboue an hundred thousand ( for their number daily encreased ) chose rather to abide the tryall of battaile.

When the Prince had rested some fewe dayes in that place, because of the barrennes thereof he dislodged from thence, and encamped in another ground more commodious. And being not far distant from his enemie, he sent backe the messenger, whom he had now detayned almost three weekes, with letters to the King of *Spaine*, containing briefly this answere: that, for respects of great importance he was come to succour the banished King, that he would willingly compound the difference betweene them, but vpon no other termes then that King *Henry* should renounce the title and resigne the gouernment of that kingdome, whereto he could pretend no lawfull interest: and if this were refused, that he should finde him prepared as well the one way, as the other.

We shewed you before in what manner the Englishmen ordered their battells. The *Spaniards* in like sort divided their whole power into three parts. The first was led by

a certaine French Captaine of great esteeme, and in it were about foure thousand men. The second was commanded by the two brothers of King *Henry*, and it contained some five and twenty thousand, horse and foote. The third by King *Henry* himselfe, and his battell far exceeded both the other in number, as hauing in it seauen thousand horse, and threscore thousand footemen, whereof a great part were armed with crossebowes. The field was pitcht betwene *Navarre* and the towne of *Navareise*. Seldome or neuer hath any battell beene fought with greater fury and violence. The spaniards vsed slings, whose force was such that therewith they pierced the helmets of their enemies, surely a cruell kinde of fight. On the other side the Englishmen being most expert arches, ouerwhelmed them with the multitude of their shot. One of king *Henries* brothers (which as we told you had the leading of the vauntgard) as soone as he sawe the Princes colors aduance towards him, departed out of the battell, and neuer strooke stroke against the enemy. His example much discouraged a great many of the rest. But King *Henry* himselfe wheresoever he sawe his men fainte or go by the worse, pressed in thither, calling earnestly vpon them, exhorting and encouraging them, and often putting them in remembrance both of his honour and their duty: in so much that thrise in that one day did his vehemēt acclamations adde new life to his souldiers courage, and thrise restrained them from flying, when they were euen betaking themselves to flight. Neyther did the common soldiers onely, exercise their weapons that day, but the Princes themselves also, laying hand to their swords, made honourable prooffe of their particular valour. The deposed Tyrant fought by all meanes he could to haue encountred King *Henry*. The fight continued for a time very vehement & cruell, the soldiers on either part well expressing the hostilitie of their affection by the violence of their actions: but at length the Spaniards vnable to withstand the vnited forces



ces of the Englishmen and Gascones, gaue themselves to flight, neither could king *Henry* by his authoritie or persuasion cause them to turne head against their enemies. So that perceiuing himselfe to be more and more abandoned of his people, he was constrained to fly also: for he made no question at all that he should be put to death if he had beene taken prisoner in the battell. The Englishmen pursued the chace & meruailous destruction was made, partly of those that were slaine, partly of those that perished in a certaine notable river thereby, whereinto they chose rather to cast themselves hedlong, then to come alive into the hands of their enemies. When the chace was ended, a generall view was taken of the dead bodies, and there were found slaine, little lesse then six hundreth horsemen, and almost seaven thousand footmen, not accounting them that were killed at the bridge or drowned in the River. After this battell the Princes came together to *Burgis* (a towne of *Spaine*) and thither resorted all the Nobilitie of the country, from *Toledo*, from *Lisbone*, from *Gallicia*, from *Sivill*, and from diuerse other places of *Castile*, to sweare fealty to Don *Pietro*, againe restored: for well they saw, it was not possible to resist such power as he had now about him.

Prince *Edward* towards victorie against *Henry* king of *Castile*

Don *Pietro* restored.

These things dispatched, Prince *Edward* delt with the Tyrant to provide money for the payment of his soldiers, by whose helpe he had recovered his kingdome: whereupon Don *Pietro* tooke his iourney into *Sivill*, there to levy mony for that purpose, pretending to returne within fewe weekes after, and to give satisfaction to all men. For at such time as he was driven out of *Castile*, & came first to *Burdeaux* to implore the Princes ayd, as we haue formerly declared, hee made faithfull promise, that assoone as he should be restored to his kingdome, he wold giue liberall contentment to all that serued in his quarell: and to the same effect became bound to the Prince, that so the Prince might be his surety to the Captaines and

H

gentle-

The ingrati-  
tude of the  
Tyrant.

gentlemen that were readie to vndertake the enterprife in his behalfe. At his departing towards *Sivill*, he made certaine appointment with the Prince, and gaue him his faith to returne verie shortly againe, and to bring mony with him for the discharge of his soldiers. When the prince vppon expectation of his returne, had taried certaine moneths beyond the time prefixed, he sent messengers to inquire the cause of his delay. The tyrant excused himself, how he had sent certaine of his servants with the mony, & that they were intercepted in the way by theeues. Wherefore he requested him to returne into his owne country, & leave some officers of his in *Castile*, to whome he would make satisfaction to the vttermost. This answer greatly displeased the Prince, but no other at that time could be obtayned.

King *Henry* escaping out of the battell, fled to *Valencia* a cittie of *Arragon*, and there acquainted the king with his calamitie. From thence he went to *Moumpelie* to the Duke of *Aniow*, a mortall enemy of the English. After that, he tooke his iourney to *Avinion* to Pope *Urban* (who was then prepaying to depart from thence to *Rome*) and to him likewise recounted his miseries and misfortunes. At last being privately ayded by the Duke of *Aniow*, he assembled certaine forces, and invaded Prince *Edwards* dominions. The Princeesse somewhat amazed with the suddainnesse thereof, sent to the French King to repress her enemy. But the French King winked at the matter. Herevppon Prince *Edward* having advertisement how the world went, was constrained to returne into his owne country before the King of *Castile* had payd him his money. As he came through *Arragon* he met with some impediments, & his passage was stopped. Neverthelesse at a day of meeting the matter was taken vp friendly betweene them.

Prince *Edward* after his returne into his owne dominion, because he had consumed a great masse of money about  
this

this expedition into *Spaine*, summoned all the nobilitie of *Aquitaine* with the burgeses of the citties, to a parliament: and there made publike request for the graunt of a generall subsidy to belevyed through all his dominion, and that only for five yeeres, in consideration as well of the great debt wherewith he had charged himselfe, and had not yet discharged his soldiers, as also for that he had spent, and in a manner cleerely exhausted all his owne treasure about this voyage. All the citties for the most parte gave their consents; but many of the greatest Lords opposed themselues against the Princes purpose. Affirming that so long as they were subiect to the King of *Fraunce*, they were never burdened with any such exactions, and rather then they would now vndergoe them, they would endure the vttermost whatsoever. When the Prince would relent no part of his rigor, the Lords which had thus gainsayd him, tooke their way directly to *Paris* to the French King, where in assembly of the councell, they declared their griefe, making sore complaint of the Prince, and withall beseeching the French King to receive them into his protection.

The Lords of  
*Gasconne* re-  
bell against  
Prince *Edward*.

The French King made answer that he would deale by the advise of his counsell, and according to the articles of peace concluded betweene his father and the King of *England*. Meane while the Lords of *Gasconne* remained at *Paris*. The subsidy was such, that euerie household should pay yeerely one francke: which had amounted to the some of twelve hundred thousand Frankes by the yeere.

King *Henry* having advertisement of the rebellion of the *Gascones*, and holding it good pollicie to make vse of another mans trouble, resolved not to let slip so faire an opportunity. Therefore by the King of *Aragons* assistance, he raised an army of ten thousand men, and which way soever he directed his forces, he recovered townes and



castles againe to his subiection. Don *Pietro* remaining the same time at *Sevill*, as soone as he heard newes of these proceedings, sent presently to the King of *Portingall* and the King of *Granado* for succour. He obtayned his request, and had gathered together in all, forty thousand men, amongst whom there were many *Saracens*.

King *Henrie* seeing it stood him in hand to proccede rather by discretion and policy, then by plaine force, (for the Tyrant farre exceeded him in number of souldiers,) following the aduise of a certaine Captaine of his, even in the mornings first approche, contrary to expectation, suddenly invaded his enemies, and fought prosperously: in such sort, that the Tyrant was constrained to fly for refuge into a castle thereby, whereof as soone as King *Henry* had intelligence, he brought all his Army thither, and bent his forces against it. The tyrant perceiving his imminent perill, issued secretly out of the castle, accompanied with some fewe in the dead time of the night, hoping so to have escaped by flight. But it was his fortune to fall into the hands of the captaine of the Scoutwatch, by whome he was apprehended and brought forthwith before King *Henry*, who at his first entrance began presently to inveigh against him with most bitter termes, and the tyrant for his part also returned words of like reproach, calling him sonne of a strumpet. To be short King *Henry* overthrowing him to the ground and getting vpon him, stab'd him to the hart with his dagger, and in short space after his death, with small trouble recovered againe the possession of the whole kingdome. The King of *Portingall* wēt about to haue revenged the death of his kinsman Don *Pietro* by battell, but he was pacified.

The death of  
Don *Pietro*,  
and recovery  
of the king-  
dome by *Hen-*  
*ry* the Ba-  
lard.

During the time that the Lords of *Gascoine* sojourned at *Paris*, the French King had a sonne borne, which afterward carried the name of his father. In the mean while the Lords of *Gascoine* made often supplication to the French King that he would undertake the defence of their cause

cause against Prince Edward: which thing if he refused to doe, extreme necessitie would compell them to seeke some vnder whose protection they might quietly enioye their possessions; by meanes whereof it might come to passe in time, that the Kings of *Fraunce* should forgoe all their right and interest in the whole province of *Aquitaine*. The french King considering the great importance and daunger of the warre, tooke long respite to deliberate vpon the matter. Most of his counsell perswaded him to warre, affirming with great vehemency that the articles of peace were infringed by the King of *England*. At length it seemed good to summon the Prince to appeare in person at the parliament of *Paris*, and certaine were appointed to carry the summons accordingly. Prince *Edward* when he heard this message, after some pause, made answere to this effect, that sithence the French King had so commanded him he would surely come to *Paris*, but it should bee with his helmet on his head, and threescore thousand souldiers in his company. The messengers departed out of *Burdeaux*, and being apprehended in their way homeward, were by the Princes commandement cast in prison.

Here by the way, it shall not be amisse to make some remembrance of the hostages left in *England*. The Duke of *Aniow* (as is declared already) had conveyed himselfe away before the death of King *John*. The Duke of *Berry* through the King of Englands curtesie, had intreated a yeeeres respite to solace himselfe in *Fraunce*. And vpon like fauour diuers others were licenced to depart for a season. Some one or twoo onely by the payment of their ransomes purchaced their liberty. Those that the King had thus dismissed, after the wars began againe, returned no more.

The french King proclaimed open warre against the King of *England*, and committed the charge thereof vnto twoo of his brethren, who mustered souldiers from all partes, so that the number of them amounted to an hundred

The peace broken, and warres againe renewed betwene *England* and *Fraunce*

dred thousand men. The French men made often incursions vppon the countrey of *Poytiers* and other of the Princes dominions. And the Princes souldiers likewise invaded the Lordships of those who had given the first occasion of these warres, and made complaint of him to the French King.

The french King published his cause and the necessity of this warre in diuers places by cunning persons, with so well seeming circumstances, as no man could otherwise iudge but that his proceedings were grounded vppon most iust and reasonable occasions. The same did the King of *England* also, verily to this intent, that by declaring the cause of the warre they might haue the people more at commandment to pay their subsidies, and to beare the burden of their exactions.

*Lewis* Earle of *Flanders* had no issue but one daughter. The King of *England* sought by all meanes to haue obtained her in marriage for his youngest Sonne, and the marriage was laboured for the space of three whole yeeres together. In the Earle himselfe was no want of good affection: but the Pope *Urbane* in regard they were of his kinred, would not wise giue his consent to the marriage. The Earle therefore perceiving this match might not go forward, began to make meanes by his friends to *Phillip* Duke of *Burgundy* the French kings brother, that the marriage might be made betweene him and his daughter. This treatie tooke effect, and so it came to passe that *Burgoyne* and *Flanders* were vnited together.

The King of *England* considering how by meanes of this marriage the Duke of *Burgundy* should become heire to the Earle of *Flanders*, practised with the King of *Norway* who bare a secret grudge to the French King for certaine Lordshippes, that he should denounce open warre against him.

The French king had provided a great power of shipping, intending to send his brother the Duke of *Burgundy*



with an army of choyce souldiers to make warres in *England*. The King of *England* having intelligence thereof, made preparation according, and determined to receiue them with some entertainment in their passage. Moreover he sent his Sonne the Duke of *Lancaster* with certaine forces to *Calice*; which when the French King vnderstood, by the advise of his counsell he altered his purpose, iudging it the better course to encounter with his enemy, when he had already passed the Seas of his owne accord. Herevpon the Duke of *Burgundy* was set forth well appointed, who at such time as he lay encamped neere his enemy, notwithstanding he were of much greater puissance, yet would he not adventure to giue him battell, unlessse he had expresse direction for the same from the king his brother.

My author reporteth that a certaine English captaine, a man of approved valour and discretion, and withall very fortunate in his affayres, hauing one day observed a faire opportunitie, would haue attempted some exploit vpon the enemy: and to the intent the better to effect his purpose, had requested an English Earle to guard him with certaine horsemen for the performance of his enterprife. Which when the Earle had condiscended vnto, some followers of his gaue him counsell to the contrary, perswading him that if the adventure prooved succesfull, the reputation thereof would redownd to another, and therefore that it were better for him to vndertake some service by himselfe, the honour whereof might be entirely his owne. By this meanes the Captaine being disappointed, was faine to leaue his desired enterprife vnperformed. Thus we see, envy and ambition, hath some predominance in all places, and oftentimes it falleth out, that through private emulation, whilst one will adventure nothing in anothers behalfe, many notable occasions are neglected, which perhaps the enemy afterward converteth to his owne aduantage.

When the French and English armies had thus a while confronted

confronted one another, the Duke of *Burgundy* by the kings commaund brake vphis campe, and licensed all his souldiers to depart. The Duke of *Lancaster* returned into *Calice*, and when he had there rested some fewe daies to refresh himselfe, reassembling his forces, he tooke his way into *Fraunce*, where having burnt vp certaine townes, because the winter approached, he dissolved his army and returned into *England*.

These long-lasting warres greatly grieved many noble men of *Fraunce*, insomuch that diuers of them conveyed away their goods & household stuffe, remooved themselves into other places where they might with more safety expect the comfort of a calmer season, wisely mistrusting least in sitting still, or taking part either with the french King or the English, they might haue taryed to their cost howsoever. For so stood the case with many of them who had possessions in both Princes dominions, that they could neither adhere to the one nor forsake the other, without prejudice to their owne estate, and apparant losse of whatsoeuer they held within either of their iurisdictions. On the other side many Lords of *Gascoine* revolted from Prince *Edward* and ioyned with the french.

King *Edward* as he was a man of singular wisdom and stayed disposition, foreseeing that this defection of the nobility from his Sonne would tend to much mischief, addressed letters into *Gascoine* to this effect. How he understood that they all for the most part were discontented with the subsidy which his Sonne had lately imposed vpon them : his mind was therefore to apply a remedy to this inconvenience, and wholly to take away all occasions which might any way moue dissension or controuersie. To which purpose and intent he had giuen commandement to his Sonne that he should surcease from all such exaction of money, and that all those which found themselves ouer-charged or burthened, either by him or any of his officers, should haue satisfaction allowed them according

according to the dammage they had sustained. And further he pardoned all such as had reuolted to the French King, vppon condition that within one moneth after they should returne againe into *Gascoigne*: requesting this only at their hands, that they would not stirre sedition, but calling to minde their promised faith and allegiance, rest contented to conformance themselves to the present state of government. In so doing they should find him ready to make particular recompence to as many as could iustly complaine of oppression. And for conclusion that this was the intention and desire both of himselfe and all his counsellours.

These letters were published in diuers places of *Gascoigne*, but they wrought small effect, for many were seen daily to forsake the Prince, and to resort to the French King notwithstanding: whereby it appeared plainely, that no vertue hath more force to hold the hearts of men in obedience, then affability. For Prince *Edward* though otherwise a worthy gentleman, being puffed vp as men commonly are, with the prosperous atchieving of great enterprises, began to carry himselfe roughly and austere towards the noble men that were his subiects: whereby it came to passe that they could not loue him. But the french King for King *Charles* that besides his excellent wisdom, he was also gentle commended and courteous, easily insinuated himselfe into the fauour and for his courteous affection of all men. By meanes whereof he greatly enriched the Realme of *Fraunce*, and worthily deserved to bee registred in the number of the most prudent Princes.

The french King by the aduise of his brethren, the Dukes of *Aniow*, *Berry*, and *Burgoyne*, with other of his nobility, sent a puissant army into *Gascoigne*. The Duke of *Aniow* marching with his forces from *Tholouse*, easily recouered either by force or by composition, whatsoeuer townes or holds were pertaining to the English in those quarters. The Duke of *Berry* invaded the territory of *Lymoges*. Cer-



taine Lords of *Gascoine* ioyned themselues with the Duke of *Anion*, they were the same that by their complaints and accusatiōns had formerly incited the french King to vndertake this warre. The Duke of *Berry* was associated with the dukes of *Burbon* and *Alaunson* and diuers others: which way soeuer they tooke, they found easie passage.

About this time the french King fell to agreement with the King of *Navarre*. For it stood him vpon to make him his friend, least perhappes he should haue giuen access to the English forces through a part of *Normandy* which he held, and by the seacoast, into the rest of that country pertayning to the crowne of *Fraunce*. The agreement was vpon this point, that the King of *Navarre* as soone as he returned into his own kingdōe, should make his defiance to the King of *England*. There came also a power out of *Spaine* to the ayd of the French King, vpon the bountie and good affection of King *Henrie*. In the

A truce taken  
with Scotland  
for 9. yeeres.

mean time the Prince of *Wales* not vnmindful of his friends & adherents, raysed men of warre on all sides; and the King his father that he might with more ease sustaine the brunt of these warres, tooke a truce with the Scottish King for nine yeeres, in such sort as it should be lawfull for the Scots to serue for entertainment on either partie at their pleasure. He sent also another armie to wast the countrey of *Picardy*: the charge whereof he committed to one Sir *Robert Knolles*, a man marvailously affected to the english natiō, though himselfe were a stranger and a briton borne. The number of his forces came to some ten thousand men. With this power departing from *Calice* and marching through *Artois*, when he came before *Arras*, he forbore to assault it, but by setting fire to the subvrbes, tempted the townesmen to make some fallie out of their gates, whereto notwithstanding he could not prouoke them. So he proceeded forward destroying all with fire and sword as he passed.

The Duke of *Aniow* after he had recouered diuers places from the English, in regard he thought sufficient, was performed for the present, imparting his purpose to the rest of his associates, dissolved his army and distributed his men into garrisons. The Duke of *Berry* after long siege, received the City of *Lymoges* by composition. Whereat the Prince of *Wales* conceived so great offence and indignation, that raysing a power immediatly, he begirt the towne with a new siege, vowing never to depart before he reduced it againe into his subiection. And when he vnderstood by such as had taken exact view of the scituation and strength thereof, that it was too hard a matter for him to take it by assault, he caused a mine to be drawne and conveyed vnder the earth even close to the gates of the Citie : which being set on fire, the violence thereof overthrew a great peece of the wall, and opened a large breach for his souldiers to enter. But who is able to report the miserable and vnumercifull slaughter which then ensued? Not so much as women and young Children which cast themselves prostrate at the feete of the English, lamentably imploring the fastie of their liues, could obtained any fauour, but were all put to the sword : so implacable was the Princes wrath, so relentlesse his displeasure. And after all this terrible massacre of people, the spoile and sacke of the Citizens goods, with the committing of all beastly and inhumane outrage, according to the lust and furie of the souldier, the towne it selfe by Prince *Edwards* command being set on fire, was vtterly raced and laid leuell with the ground. The Duke of *Berry* when he wanne this Citie had dismissed his army as his brother had done before him : by meanes whereof it came to passe, that his souldiers being disperfed and fewe perhaps remayning there in garrison, the townesmen were left destitute of releefe.

The armie of Sir *Robert Knolles* which had pierced through *Fraunce* into the country of *Aniow*, was at length slaine by the Constable, and Sir *Robert* himselfe escaping

by flight retourned into *Britaine*. About this time dyed Pope *Vrbane*, who but lately before was returned to *Avinion*. In his place was set vp *Gregorie* the xi through the earnest sute and greattravell of the french King, who foresawe that this bishop would be a great strength to his proceedings.

Prince *Edward* by the advise of his phisitions left *Gascogne*, and returned into his owne country. For at such time as he warred in *Spaine*, in the behalfe of *Don Pietro* the banished tyrant of *Castile*, he caught a greivous and welneere incurable disease, which was now so farre growne and encreased vpon him, that he was not able to sit vpon horsebacke, but was faine to be caried from place to place in a litter: wherevpon his phisitions gaue him counsell to go into *England*, because they were of opinion he might better be recovered, in regard the temperature of the climate (being his natie soile) was more agreeable to the constitution of his body. At his departure out of *Aquitaine*, he appointed his brother the Duke of *Lancaster*, (who during the whole continuance of the warres had beene partaker of his fortunes) to be his vicegerent into those quarters: beseeching the noble men of *Gascogne* which were assembled at *Burdeaux* that they would be content to accept of his government.

Prince Edward returneth into England.

We haue formerly made mention of the King of *Maiorica*, who in hope to be revenged of the disgrace and iniury done vnto him, had for a time depended vpon the faithfull promise of Prince *Edward* to ayd him against his enemy the King of *Arragon*, then confederate with the Spaniard. But King *Henrie* of *Spaine* when after the Princes departure he had almost recovered all that belonged to his dominion, found this King of *Maiorica* in a certaine towne of *Spaine*, left there by the english for recovery of his helth: and because he had taken part with his enemies, apprehended him and detained him in prison for the space of certain yeeres after. At length by the helpe of his friends and vpon the payment of an hundred thousand pistolets, he procured



cured his liberty, and levying great forces against the king of *Arragon*, the matter had surely come to a bloudy conclusion, had he not againe fallen suddenly into a violent sicknes, which in short space ended his life. By this meanes therefore the occasion being taken away, the warres ceased.

Don *Pietro* the tyrant of *Spaine*, whose history we haue discoursed already, left behind him two daughters, *Constance* & *Isabell*, whome certaine noble men of *Spaine* im-

mediately vpon their fathers death conveyed by sea into *Aquitaine*. The Duke of *Lancaster* by aduise and perswasion of his friends, espoused *Constance* the elder of these sisters: wherevnto he was the rather moved, as well in commiseration of the young Ladies miserie, as in hope hereafter to obtaine the possession of their inheritance. The

The Duke of Lancaster marrieth *Constance* one of the daughters of Don *Pietro*.

King of *Spaine* having intelligence hereof, & fearing likewise that the King of *Englands* sif sonne would marry the other daughter, addressed his ambassadors to the French King, with whome he ioyned in most stedfast league of friendship: the French King for his part promising him assured ayd against any enemy whatsoever, and moreover that he would never enter into other conditions of peace with the King of Eng'and, but such as should be both to the honour and profit of the King of *Spaine*.

Edmond of Langly.

The Duke of *Lancaster* shortly after his marriage assembled the Lords of the country together, and declaring to them his occasions and purpose of departure, appointed such officers as should governe in his absence, and departed with his wife into *England*.

The Duke of Lancaster returneth into *England*.

King *Edward* vpon aduilement with his counsell, determined to send his sonne the Duke of *Lancaster* with an army into *Picardy*, which wasting and destroying that country, should from thence proceede forward into *France*. Moreover he sent the Earle of *Pembroke* with another army into *Aquitaine*, to make warre likewise in those parts, that so the French men might not faile to haue their hands

1372.

The English  
men over-  
come at Sea,  
& the Earle  
of Pembroke  
taken priso-  
ner.

full on all sides. But the French King hauing knowledge hereof, by meanes of certaine *English* men that resorted vnto him, forefortified with garrisons all places of *Picardy* and further vnderstanding by relation of those fugitives that the English fleet should arrive in *Gascoigne*, he gave secret intelligence therof to the King of *Spaine* his new confederate. The Spanyard performed the part of a friend & sent 40 great Ships with thirteene others of lesse recey well appointed to meete with the English men in the passage. Not farre from *Rochell* the Spanisch fleet encountered the English with great violence, and the fight continued almost a whole day without intermission. During which space the *Rochellers* stood like idle spectators beholding the conflict, and being requested by their governors to helpe the English in their necessitie, alleadged frivolous matters for excuse and refused: For howsoeuer they disssembled outwardly to the worlde, yet in their hearts they vtterly abhorred the Englishmens government. The next day they renewed their fight afresh, and it was maintained with as great resolution as ever was any. Notwithstanding, in the end the Spaniards obtained victory by reason that both in number of men and shipping, and in the greatnesse of their vessels also they much overmarched the English. Many were slaine, and many taken prisoners, amongst whom was the Earle of *Pembroke* himselfe, and most part of the captaines in his fleet. The ship likewise which carryed a great quantity of treasure for the maintayning of three thousand soldiers, was swallowed vp in the sea. After this battell was ended, came a sufficient power out of *Gascoigne* to *Rochell*, but it was too late when the matter had falne out so vnprosperously before.

Thus it came to passe, that by little and little the King of *England* lost all his whole seigniory of *Gascoigne*, the people partly rebelling, and partly yeelding themselues willingly to his enemy.

While

Whilst these things passed, there repaired to the French Kings court one *Ivan*, the sonne of a certaine Britishe Lord, making grevous complaint of great iniury done vnto him by the King of *England*, both in causing his father *Ammen* Prince of *Wales* to be wrongfully put to death, & afterward in conferring the principalltie of the whole country to his owne sonne *Edward*. Vpon relation of his grevance, the French King furnished him with a flecte of ships and some foure thousand men to serue him, by whose helpe this *Ivan*, entring into a certaine yland belonging to the English, and comming to encounter with his enemies, overthrew them in the field and put them to flight. After which exploit he was recalled by the French King and sent into *Spaine*, there to make provision of more Shippes, that he might lay siege to the towne of *Rochell*.

*Ivan* the son  
of *Ammen*  
Prince of  
*Wales*.

The Ile of  
*Garnesey*.

This good successe of the French kings affaires both by the Spanyards and by *Ivan*, gave him occasion to thinke that the rest of the English provinces, would easily be brought to revolte; especially if the English men should receive but another overthrowe, or at leastwise be put to any extraordinary trouble or molestation. Herevpon he sent the constable, with a great power of the chiefe peers of his kingdome, to renewe the warres againe in his enemies countries. As soone as they came into the territory of *Poytiers*, all the townes and castles thereabout rendred themselves into their subiection. The townesmen of *Poytiers* being at variance among themselves, addrested letters to the constable, signifying their good affection toward him, and early in the next morning according to promise, set open their gates to receive him into the cittie. This example of the *Poitvins* diverse other townes tooke as a president for themselves to imitate.

*Poytiers* yeeldeth to the  
French.

In the meane while, this *Ivan* whom we spake of before, accompanied with the Spanish Admirall, came with a well furnished navy out of *Spaine* and arrived at *Rochell*: which



which towne notwithstanding sustained no damage at their hands, because the townesmen hated the English, and desired by all meanes to be againe vnder the French King's government. They had long since freed themselves from their forced subiection, but that the English garrison which kept the castle, held them alwaies in such awe as they durst never venter to put their purpose in execution. At length contriving a stratageme politick enough for the time; vnder pretence of taking a generall muster as was of the townesmen, as of the garrison, they allured the capitaine (who was a man of no great forecasse) with all his company out of the hold. Which done, forthwith a great number of the townesmen, breaking out from an ambuscage gaue assault to the forte and suddenly surprised it, those fewe which made resistance being easily repressed. The noble men of *Fraunce* were at the same time assembled at *Poytiers*, and having intelligence hereof, were desirous to be received by the *Rochellers* into their towne. Wherevnto they condescended, but vppon certaine conditions which were these. 1. That it should be lawfull for the men of *Rochell* utterly to raze their Castle, out of which they had often received so great displeasure, and to lay it leuell with the ground: 2, That the French men should solemnely promise never to erecte any castle there againe: 3, And that *Rochell* from thenceforth should perpetually remaine a member of the crowne of *Fraunce*, and never be alienated to any other Lord, by any possible meanes that might be devised according as times and states should happen to alter afterward. When the King (who was made acquainted with these proceedings by the Lords) had confirmed and ratified these covenants, *Rochell* became subiect againe to the French: and the revolting of this towne, gave occasion to many other of their neighbours to doe the like.

The French kings capitaines holding it discretion to follow their fortune, vsed such industry, that in short space they recovered all the territorie of *Poyton* and the country adioy

Rochell yeeldeth to the French.

dioyning, not without some helpe and furtherance from the Britens, who were exceedingly inclined to the French King, though their Lord wholly favoured the King of England, as by whose meanes he had obtayned his Dukedome. It happened not long after that the Englishmen immediately vppon their comming into Britaine, burnt vp seaven great shippes of the King of Spaines as they lay here in harbour. Herevppon suspicion arose, that this matter was done by the Duke of Britaines consent and direction, whereof the French king being advertised by certaine Lords of Britaine, sent the Constable to make warres vppon the Duke and to conquer his country, as one who had forfeited his estate by entering into a league with the English men against him, of whome he had received the investiture of his Dukedome, and to whome as the custome is he had sworne homage and fealtie. The Duke of Priraire in this extremitie, distrusting his owne subjects fled into England. And the Constable by the helpe of the Britons themselves brought much of the country in subiecton.

The Duke of Britaine flyeth into England.

David King of Scotland deceased without issue, and by right of succession, the crowne descended to Robert. 1373.

It is said before, that King Edward after his sonne the Duke of Lancaster was come with his wife into England, had determined to send him ouer againe to make warres in Picardy. But the matter was delayed. For this yeere was the first time of his arrivall at Calice accompanied with the Duke of Britaine, and thirteene thousand soldiers. They raunged through a great part of Picardy, putting all to fire and sword, but they abstayned from besieging of townes for the French king had long before sufficiently strengthened them with garrisons. And as they marched forward making havocke of all things, the French army still followed without intermission: notwithstanding they never came to ioyne battell, but by intercession of the Popes legates, a truce was taken, and a time ap-

The Duke of Lancaster arriveth at Calice

K

pointed

pointed for another meeting at *Bruges* in *Flanders* there to treat of weightier matters.

1376.

Before this truce was proclaymed, the Duke of Britaine by the Englishmens ayd, had recovered diverse places, and was like to have gotten more, had not the newes of this truce beene a stay to his proceedings. Therefore discharging his army and leaving good garrisons in the places recovered, he returned into *England*. About the calends of November the ambassadors of both Kings repayred to *Bruges*, that thereby mediation of the Popes Legates, they might treat of a marriage betweene *Richard* sonne to the Prince of *Wales*, and *Marie* the French Kings daughter. The matter was diversely debated, but could not be brought to any perfect conclusion. Pope *Gregorie* taking offence thereat, departed from *Avinion* and went to *Rome*.

The death of  
Prince Edward.

About this time Prince *Edward* the King of *England* eldest sonne, a most worthy and valiant gentleman, ended his life at London. After whose death king *Edward* assembling the rest of his sons and the nobilitie of his realme declared publikelie vnto them, his purpose that *Richard* the sonne of his sonne deceased, should succeed in the inheritance of the kingdome. And because he had long since imparted as much both to the noble men and the confidence of his sonnes, before he made his last voyage into *France*, it was no hard matter to perswade them all to approve his determination, and to confirme the same by

King Edward  
the thirds  
death and  
commendation.

oath. Within a while after the King himselfe also departed this life, not without great sorrowe of as many as knewe him: for he was a Prince so renowned, that even the French King himselfe, when he heard of his death, gave this report, that he thought him worthy to be numbered amongst the wisest of princes. After his deceasse, succeeded *Richard* his grand sonne, according to his owne appointment in his life time, and was crowned king of *England* the eleuenth yeele of his age, Anno Dom. 1377.

King Richard  
2.  
1377.



The Duke of *Lancaster* was chosen protectour, and tooke vpon him the government of the realme during the kings minority, who in the meane while was trayned vp vnder the instruction of a certaine noble man appoynted to that charge by generall election.

It is declared before how the French King the better to maintain his warres against *England*, had made a league with the King of *Navarre*, but it fell out afterward that two gentlemen of the house of *Navarre*, attending vpon the king of *Navarres* sonnes in the French court, were had in suspection of giving poyson to the King. Which fact The French King poysoned. when they had publickly confessed before the people, they were put to execution for the same. Immediately herevpon the French King sent an army into the sea coast of *Normandy* belonging to the King of *Navarre*, vnder the conduct of the Constable, who easily subdued all that part I 378. of the country. Besides this, the King of *Spaine* the French kings new confederate, made warre also vpon the King of *Navarre*: who beeing driuen to this distresse, required ayd of *Richard* King of *England*, of whome he accordingly ob- rayned it.

The Duke of *Britaine* remayning still in *England*, made importunate suite to the young King from time to time for ayd, but the king gaue alwaies a deafe eare to his request. For the Duke of *Lancaster* aspiring to get that seigniory to himselfe, assenbled a power, and layled over into Britaine, where he layd siege to certaine places, but the French I 379. army wherof the Constable was generall, compelled him so depart.

---

*The second Booke.*


---



IN the former booke is declared how the French men recovered a great parte of *Aquitaine* from the English. There were many still notwithstanding in those places, which stood stoutly for the King of *England*. The Duke of *Anion* therefore comming thither with an army subdued in a mannner all that euer remayned. The *Gascoignes* had lately before sent into *England* for succour: but by reason there was trouble and insurrection budding vp within the realme, their sending was to none effect. For the Duke of *Lancaster* who had all the authoritie in his hands, was much hated by the commons, which afterward was the occasion of much mischief in *England*. Thus when no forces came from thence to their rescue, the *Gascones* destitute of all succour, were constrained to yeeld themselues to the enemy.

The French King being a wise and politicke prince, held correspondence with all men which might stand him in stead, or from whome he expected any commoditie or furtherance: considering therefore with himselfe how the king of *England* was yet vnder age, and that trouble and part-taking were growing within the realme, he solicited *Robert* King of *Scotland*, and put him often in remembrance by his letters, to make warre vpon the Englishmen now while so great opportunity was offered, that being thereby busied at home, they might not haue so good leysure to passe ouer into *Fraunce*. The scottish King moued with

with these instigations, and partly of himselfe desirous to reuenge old iniuries, especially whilst the King of *England* was yet in his nonage, vppon consultation of the matter, sent commaundement for the assembling of his people to meete him at a certaine time ready furnished and appointed for the warres, vppon the borders of *England* and *Scotland*. When they were come together, a certaine Scottish Lord desirous to shew some proffe of his valor and bold courage, associating himselfe with some fewe others, in the night season whilst the watch were all sleeping or negligēt, without any great difficulty surprisid the castle of *Barwicke*.

When the gouernour of the towne vnderstood it, he gatherd together a company of the townsmen and early in the morning as soone as any daylight appeared, first brake downe the bridge (which was the onely passage to issue out,) and then environed the castle round about with a siege, so straightly that it was impossible for his enemy to make any evasion. The people of the country being also certified by him how the matter stood, brought in ten thousand men to his ayde. At the tydings whereof, the Scottish men raised their campe to come and rescue their besieged companions. But they were so terrified with the greatnes of the English army, that they would not aduventure the curtesie of fortune. So in conclusion, assault was giuen, the castle recovered, and all that were in it were put to the sword, saue onely the captaine himselfe, vppon whose authoritie this enterprise was vndertaken. After the Castle was thus gotten againe, it seemed good to the Englishmen to pursue their eniemies in their re-treyte, which they likewise did, though it fell out to their own deadly disadvantage, fortune fauouring the Scottish.

Pope *Gregorie* in time past had made a solemne vow, that if euer he attained to the Papacy, he would neuer keepe his residence any other where then are *Rome*. This was very offensive to some of the Cardinals which bare scarce good affection to the Romaines: and it was nothing pleasing

The Castle  
of *Barwicke*  
surprised by  
the Scottish.

Againe reco-  
uered by  
the English.



Great tumult  
about the e-  
lection of a  
Pope.

to the french King, who was desirous to haue had the Pope his neerer neighbour. Therefore he sent his brother the Duke of *Anjou* to *Avinion* to perswade with him, but he was not able to diuert him from his purpose. So he went to *Rome*, the place he desired, and within a while after there ended his life. When the Cardinals as the custome is were assembled together for the election of another, the people of *Rome* began to make great tumult in the court, threatening violent effects of their displeasure, if they made choyce of any other to be Pope, then such a one as was both by birth and ancestors a Romaine: And therewithall rushing in amongst the Cardinals, and with their fury interrupting their businesse, it came to passe by meanes of this disturbance, that one was chosen for Pope which was 100 yeeres old. This man the Romanes hoysed vpon a white Mule, and with great solemnity led him about the Citie. But the crooked old man wearie with this troublesome kind of curtesie, and tyred with this tumbling vpon and downe, within three daies after gaue vp the ghost. Wherevpon ensued another hurliburly, the Romaines therein with arrogant threatens shewing themselues more outrageous then before. At length a Romaine borne was elected and called afterward by the name of *Urbane* the sixt.

About the same time dyed the Queene of *Navarre* the french kings sister, and by her decease a certaine seigniory in *Normandy* fell to *Charles* and *Peter* the King of *Navarres* sonnes, which were brought vp in the french Court. Many counselled the french King to seize into his hands all the King of *Navarres* possessions in *Normandy*, and to hold the same till his sonnes were come of age. The King of *Navarre* mistrusting as much, requested to haue his Sonnes sent home, pretending that he was purposed to bestow the elder of the in marriage with the King of *Spaines* daughter. Answer was returned by the french King, that his sonnes could not be in a better or more honourable place

place then in his Court. For he would bring them vp in all respects, as was fitting for the Sonnes of a King, and such as were ayed in bloud to himselfe. This answer was taken in displeasure by the King of *Navarre*, who therevpon fortified those places of *Normandy* against the force of the french men. Many important occasions mooued the french King to conceiue offence against the King of *Navarre*, but especially that matter of poisoning, which we told you before was confessed. Wherefore sending an army against him, he subdued *Mounpeliier*, and the country about it, which at that time were vnder the King of *Navarres* subiection.

The King of *Navarre* being thus molested both vpon the frontiers of his owne kingdome, and in *Normandy*, (for the French King had sent an army thither also) made request to the King of *England* by ambassadours, that he might be receiued into his frendship. The King of *England* sent him answer, how he thought it expedient, that if he would deale seriously and effectually in matters of such importance, he should come into *England* himselfe. This motion was well accepted by the King of *Navarre*, and accordingly he repaired into *England*: where recounting his misfortunes, after the matter had been debated in counsell, he was receiued into league and amity with the King of *England*, vpon these or the like conditions. 1. That from thenceforth euer after he should take part with the English: 2. That he should neuer make peace with the french King or the King of *Spaine* vpon any termes whatsoeuer, without consent of the King of *England* and his counsell: 3. That he should fortifie the Cattle of *Chirburg* in *Normandy*, and maintaine a garrison in it for three yeeres space to the vse of the King of *England*: 4. That, if it should happen the Englishmen to recover any townes in these quarters from the french, then the King of *England* to haue the profits of the same, the propriety of the places remaining to the King of *Navarre*. And this especially

King Richard  
entreteth into  
league with  
the King of  
*Navarre*.

especially was most acceptable to the English, because from thence they might alwaies haue accesse into *France* at their pleasure. It was further agreed, that the King of *England* should immediatly send foure thousand horsemen into *Navarre* to be employed against the Spaniard, and that it should not be lawfull for them to depart out of the King of *Navarres* seruice, till such time as the warres were finished. This to be done, not at the King of *Englands* charged, but his owne.

The french King being aduertised by some of the King of *Navarres* owne household, that he was purposed to goe into *England*, perswaded the king of *Spaine* to make inuasion vpon his country in the meane while. The commaunder of that army which the french King had sent into *Normandy* was a great souldier, and one well experienced in martiall affaires, called the Lord *Cowcy*. This man whilst the King of *Navarre* was absent negotiating his affaires in *England*, recouered many townes and fortresses thereabout, and with so much more facility because he caried in his company *Charles* the King of *Navarres* eldest sonne; in whose behalfe when many heard those warres were vndertaken, they stood not much vpon resistance. Onely the Castle of *Chirburg* remayned still to be brought in subiection.

*Henrie* King of *Castile* besieging *Bayon* (a towne of the English dominion) with a great army, had surely enforced them to yeeld had not the plague consumed his souldiers. Neuerthelss he brought not forth his forces in vaine, for he subdued many other townes thereabouts: and besides a great part of his army was conveyed to the siege of *Pampelone* the chiefe Citie of *Navarre*.

I told you before of one *Ivan* a welch man, who after the death of his father Prince of *Wales*, had from thenceforth of a child beene brought vp vnder *Phillip*, *Iohn*, & *Charles*, Kings of *Fraunce*. This *Ivan* being growne to mans estate, and desirous of reuengment, omitted no occasion whereby he



he might worke displeasure to the English : and in all military employments so demeaned himselfe, that the french King held him in great reputation. As he lay at the siege of a certaine Castle in the country of *Burdeloys*, and had brought the besieged to that point that famine must of necessity haue enforced them to yeeld, a certaine welchman vnder pretence of bringing priuate intelligence of his countrymens good affection, insinuated himselfe into his acquaintance, and in conclusion waiting oportunitie one day when he had no other company about him, cruelly mur-  
Ivan of VVales tre-  
cherously  
murthered by  
one Iames  
Lanbe a  
welch man,  
as he lay at  
the siege of a  
certaine ca-  
stle called  
Mottaine.  
red him vnawares as he sat idely gazing vpon the Castle & combing his head. The rest of the Captaines though they were much troubled with this shâe full murder of so gallant a souldier, yet continued their siege very straightly notwithstanding. But vpon the approche of a great number of Englishmen comming by sea, both the french men, and Britons (which ioyned to their ayd) were constrained to breake vp their campe and leaue their enterprise vnperformed. By this occasion the Englishmen recouered much in the territory of *Burdeauz*.

Amongst other places, the English had besieged a towne in Britaine called Saint *Maloës*, at that time in possession of the french men. Many assaults were giuen and those very violent, but the french King then abyding at *Roan*, sent an army, whose comming somewhat abated the fury of the assaylants, and gaue a stop to their proceedings. Neuertheles they went forward with their enterprise and attempted to cōpasse it by vndermining. Which when the townesmen perceiued, taking the aduantage of opportunity, one night very secretly they issued out of the towne, and whilst their enemies kept negligent watch, brake vp the mines in such sort, that those which laboured in the workes vnderneath, were ouerwhelmed with the earth which they rumbled vpon them. The English thus preuented, and disappointed of their purpose, thought it best for their behoofe to returne into their countrey. Two of the King

of Englands vnckles were cheefe cōmanders in this seruice.

*John* the King of Spaines Sonne (termed the infant of *Spaine*) and the Constable of *Spain* together besieged *Pampelone*. The King of *Nauarre* emboldened with the assistance of the English, valiantly defended himselfe and was purposed to haue giuen battell in the field : but King *Henrie* vppon some occasions recalled his sonne, and so the army was dispersed. The Englishmen and *Nauarroys* together pursued the Spaniards in their departure, and burned and sacked certaine townes and villages vppon the frontiers. Wherewith the King of *Spaine* was so vehemently mooued, that he raysed an army of some forty thousand, in purpose to haue besieged *Tudell*, the place where the King of *Nauarre* wintered. But by mediation of good men, a meanes was found to make peace between them. Which was, that *Charles* the King of *Nauarres* son should take to wife the King of Spaines daughter, and the King of *Spaines* Sonne should likewise marry the King of *Nauarres* daughter. This *Charles* (as we told you) had been detained certaine yeeres by the french King : but at such time as this treaty of marriage tooke effect, vpon the king of Spaines request, he was honourably sent home to her father. Immediately vppon the conclusion of these matters, the King of *Spaine* decessed, and *John* his sonne with the generall consent and approbation of the state, was receiued in his steed. The Duke of *Lancaster* and his brother (who had married the daughters of *Pietro* the tyrant slaine by King *Henrie*) tooke it in high displeasure that the matter was knit vp in this sort ; not a little enuing the new kings coronation. The King of *Portingall* also was very much offended at the succession of King *John*, as shall be declared more at large hereafter.

*Henrie* the  
bastard King  
of *Castile* de-  
cesseth and  
*John* his Son  
succeedeth.

*Edmond* of  
*Langley*.

The French king being a notable politicke Prince, and of great experience in matters of state, to the intent he might more commodiously maintaine his warres against the English, sent an ambassadour into *Scotland* to retayne the

the Scottish King in amity and frendship. This man arriving by the way at *Sluce* in *Flaunders* from whence he purposed to haue proceeded on his iourney, was by the magistrate of the towne brought before the Earle then remaying at *Bruges* : where by occasiō of some vndiscreet speeches, he was reprooued and sharply checkt with tearmes of reproch, both by the Earle of *Flaunders* himselfe, and by the Duke of *Britaine* ; inueying earnestly against such kind of persons, as the chiefe causers of all dissention and vnquietnes. There were others also which put him in feare that if he committed himselfe to sea, it was likely that the Englishmen lying in waight for such oportunities, would intercept him in his passage. Herevppon altering his purposes he returned into *Fraunce* without dispatch of his commission : and vppon the report he made of these matters, the french King wrote very sharpe letters to the Earle of *Flaunders*, exhorting and aduising him as he tendered his owne welfare, that he should not foster his enemy the Duke of *Britaine*. When the Earle had imparted these letters to his counsell, there were none but perswaded him, that a banished Prince forced in such sort to flye his country, was by all meanes to be releued : many of them boasting, that if it should come to the push to haue warres for the matter, *Flaunders* was able to withstand the vttermost that *Fraunce* could doe. Neuertheles the duke of *Britaine* shortly after of his owne accord departed into *England*, and the minds and affections of his people began to incline more fauourably towards him then in former times they had done.

It is declared before, how the Cardinals after the death of Pope *Gregorie*, to pacify the tumult of the Romanes, had through feare and compulsion chosen *Urbane* the sixt. Now because this *Urbane* by reason of his pride and insolency was misliked of all men, the Cardinals by generall consent proceeded to a new election, and chose *Robert* bishop of *Cambrey*, called afterwards by the name of *Clement*.



He is called  
Siluester Budaus.  
Froß. Chro.  
Lib. 2.

*ment.* There remained at that time in the territory of the Romanes one *Robert Budaus*, a man honourably descended in the country of *Britaine* and a stout warriour, hauing two thousand of his country men vnder his command. Him did Pope *Clement* sollicite for the maintenance of his quarrell, who nothing misliking the motion, was secretly conveyed with his men into the Castle from thence, to worke disturbance to the Romanes. On the other side the Romanes oftentimes sent the Germane and Italian souldiers whome they had waged in their defence, against these Britons: and they handled the matter in such sort, that their enemies wearied with their often and continuall assaultes, were at length constrained to yeeld vp the Castle vpon no other conditions, but only the sauing of their liues. *Robert* their captaine who was not present at the dooing hereof, but lay encamped without the Citie, when he heard these tydings, waighted oportunitie till such time as he vnderstood by his espialles, that the Romanes should assemble together in the Castle to consult of their affaires: then taking his way through secret passages, and vnder the euening couert entring closely into the Citie euen at the first time that could be wished for his purpose, he assayed the Romanes as they came out of the counsell house, vnarmed and suspecting no such matter: of whome he made a terrible slaughter, and killed many of the principall men and cheefe Citizens amongst them. After the accomplishment of which mischeefe, he returned againe to his campe at leysure.

When the French King vnderstood that a newe Pope was created, he called a conuocation of certaine estates & chiefly of diuines, demaunding their opinion whether of the two Popes ought in this diuersitie to be acknowledged. Their censures for the most part as happeneth in such cases, were variable and different. The Lords of the spiritalty with the Kings brothers, and many of the diuines, were of opinion that *Clement* ought to be receiued. This

determi-

determination pleased the King well, and was immediately proclaymed through the whole kingdom, that a certainty might generally be knowne for his subiects to trust vnto. Of the same iudgement were the King of *Spaine*, the Earle of *Savoy*, the Duke of *Millaine*, and the Queene of *Naples*. *Charles* of *Boheme* the Emperour dissembled his minde, notwithstanding the greater parte of the Empire tooke parte with Pope *Vrbane*. The Scottish King also inclined to *Clement*. *Lewis* Earle of *Flaunders* affirmed boldly, that open iniurie was offered to *Vrbane*: the *Henaulters* stood newter, adhering neither to the one, nor the other. Pope *Clement* the better to confirme his cause, directed the Cardinall of *Poytiers* into *Fraunce* and the countries adioyning, to publish in all places where he came, how *Vrbane* had beene by force and violence vtterly against the willes of the Cardinales, intruded into the papacie. It was an easie matter to perswade the French men, who had already giuen sentence on his side. The Earles of *Henault* and *Barband*, omitted not to giue him all honourable and curteous entertainment, but for aught else, there was nothing to be obtayned at their handes. The Earle of *Flaunders* had sent him word long before, that he had no desire to talke with him, for he accounted *Vrbane* as chiefe shepheard of the Lords flock, and intended neuer to forsake him. Moreouer Pope *Clement* sent to *Avinion* to haue his Court prepared and furnished with all things necessary against his coming.

About this time the Queene of *Naples* resorted to the Pope to treat with him of very important affaires: and thus stood the case. *Lewis* of *Sicill* Duke of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, lying vpon his death bed, caused this his daughter to come before him & addressed his speech to her in this manner. Thou art now (my deare daughter) to enter vpon the inheritance of a most flourishing estate, & I doubt not but many princes will be forward to desire thee in marriage, in respect of this thy goodly and glorious heritage.

The Queene  
of Naples cometh to the  
Pope.

Therefore if thou wilt follow thy fathers counsell, match thy selfe to a Prince that is rich and powerfull whose puissance may be able to defend both thee and thy possessions. And if it happen that thou haste no issue, then make conueyance of all thy patrimony according to the direction of the Pope then being. This my father *Robert* enioyned me at his death, and this (to discharge my selfe of that duetie) I likewise giue in charge to thee againe. When the father had discoursed much more to this effect, the daughter deuoutly promised in the presence of many, that she would not faile in her duety for the performance of his commaund. After her fathers deceasse, she was married to *Andrew* the brother of *Lewis* the King of *Hungary*: but of this marriage proceeded no issue, be reason that her husband dyed very young. Afterward she matcht her selfe to *Charles* prince of *Tarent*, and by him had only one daughter. Against this *Charles*, the King of *Hungary* moued warres, and subdewd from him the countries of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Charles* himselfe being likewise taken prisoner in battell and carryed away into *Hungary* where he ended his life. After him she married to the King of *Maiorica*, and sent Ambassadors into *Fraunce* to *Lewis* of *Navarre* (of whome we haue formerly made mention) for the concluding of a match betweene him and her daughter. Who taking his iourney for the same intent, deceased by the way before he could attaine the accomplishment of his purpose. The King of *Maiorica* in hope to recover his fathers inheritance, prepared to make sharp warres vpon the King of *Arragon*, by whome it was withholden from him. His wife desirous to retaine him still at home, dissuaded him all she could from his intended enterprise, alleadging how he already enioyed a kingdom large and flourishing sufficient of it selfe to maintaine plenty euen with superfluitie: but she could not preuaile. Therefore giving place to his resolution, at his departure she earnestly exhorted him, that he should open all his estate



state to *Charles* King of *Fraunce* who was a wise and prudent prince, and declaring to him his iniuries receiued, dispose all his proceedings according to his direction. But the King of *Maiorica* expecting I know not what greater helps elsewhere, required ayde of Prince *Edward* the king of *Englands* sonne, who indeede faithfully promised him what he was able to performe. Now during his absence, vpon these occasions his wife sent a messenger to the French King, requesting him that out of his royall curesse he would be a meane to procure her a match for her daughter, such a one as both for the nobilitie of his birth and the worthinesse of his person, were fitting for her estate: to the intent that so ample & rich possessions might not at any time fall into the hands of straungers. The french king moued with her reasonable petition, sent a kinsman of of his, vnto whome she willingly espoused her daughter. The King of *Maiorica* as is shewed before, ended his life in the pursute of his enterprise: After his death the Queen married againe the fourth time. Whereat the King of *Hungaries* nephew named *Charles*, conceiuing great offence, made warres vpon the new king, and besieging him in a certaine castle vpon the sea coast, at the winning thereof (which was by composition) he tooke both him and her prisoners, and with them also her daughter and her husband, which vnfortunate payre it fortun'd soone after to exchange this life for a better. The king and his wife were both released, vpon condition that they should surrender *Apulia* and *Calabria*. Which when *Charles* had once gotten into his possession, thenceforth establishing his estate, & augmenting his puissance by ioyning in league with the princes round about him, he gaped also for the kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicill*, and *Province*. The Queene therefore fearing, and in a manner foreseeing that alsoone as she were dead, *Charles* would with all his forces inuade those dominions, repayred to the Pope, discourfing to him the whole state of her affayres, and withall beseeching him  
that

The Queene  
of Naples co-  
ueyeth her  
inheritance to  
the Pope.

that he would receiue her into his protection. Hereupon by a franke and free graunt, she conueyed *Naples, Sicill, Calabria, Apulia & Province*, absolutely to the Pope, to bestow them all vpon whomsoever he pleased hereafter. The Pope accepted this donatiō of hers very thankfully, & caused instruments of the same made in forme of lawe, to be publicly recorded. Not long after, the Pope at his comming to *Auinion* bestowed all those seigniories vpon the Duke of *Aniow* which came thither from *Tholous* to visite him: and this graunt was confirmed to him and to his heyres for euer.

The occasion  
of the Flemish  
warres.

*John Lyon* a  
feditious fel-  
low in *Gaunt*,  
bringeth vp  
the faction of  
the white  
cappes.

The men of *Bruges* endeaoured with great labour and cost to drawe the riuer *Lysa* from *Gaunt* to their towne; & for effecting thereof, kept well nere fise hundred men at worke, The *Gauntoyes* being certified of their proceedings, began to make some stirre and to shew themselves discontent with the matter. There was at that time in *Gaunt* a meruailous factious fellowe and very popular, called *John Lyon*, one that applyed his whole studie and industry to incense the people against their Prince. His counsell being demaunded by the commons in this matter; with a few speech and composed countenance, he made answer to this effect. That in truth this attempt of the men of *Bruges* was not to be tollerated, but withall, that an auncient custome of the cittie (very laudable though at that time growne out of vse) was necessary to be renewed, namely, that all such as were desirous of the auncient libertie, should weare white cappes. For (sayd he) the *Gauntoyes* haue had many and those very notable priueledges about others, which by little and little were now worne out of date and vtterly extinguished, to the great wrong & prejudice of the citizens: and if they would be so contented still, it would come to passe in the end, that euen those that remayned should be taken from them. That the cittie of *Gaunt* had in times past so flourished that men of great account held themselves well appayd, and thought no small honour

honour if eyther by desert, reward, or fauour they might obtaine to be made free denizens of the city : but now the world was so chaunged, that no man (no not for benefite & commoditie profered him) would much desire to be admitted into their societie. With these and such like speeches he exceedingly stirred vp their mindes, and easily drew the worser sorte of people to followe him. Euery man be tooke him to his white cap : and one day amongst the rest assembling themselves together, they tooke armes & went forth to destroy the labourers of *Bruges*. But they hauing incling thereof, left their worke vnfinished, and prouided for their safety by flight. Another matter which greatly exaggerated their displeasure, was this. The *Gauntoys* would haue had a townesman of theirs set at liberty whom the Earle had caused to be apprehended : exclainging that therby their priuiledges were violated. And therfore when they had sent their messenger to the Sheriffe, and could not obtaine his deliuerance, they made meanes to the Earle to get him released. The Earle promised he would willingly afforde them that pleasure, adding further that he would doe nothing whereby their liberties might any way be infringed, and moreover that he would giue commandement to the men of *Bruges* wholly to surceasse from their attempted enterprise, and to fill vp all those ditches which they had digged and cut out already. Desiring onely in the meane time that they would leaue of that fashion of wearing white cappes, as a thing that ministred perpetuall matter of faction and sedition. When this answere was brought to the *Gauntoyes*, it greatly alienated their affections from the Earle, especially being so exasperated and prouoked against him by *Lyon* the author of this insurrection : who perswaded them confidently that if this custome might be abollished, it were the next way to reduce them againe into their old subiection and seruitude. Now although the Earle of *Flaunders* entreated his people faire to lay aside their cappes, yet neuerthelesse

M

he



he sent some two hundred men to haue entred vnlookt for into the citie, who surprising *Lyon* and certaine others, should haue conveyd them from the people, and committed them to prison. But this matter could not be so covertly handled, but *Lyon* gat knowledge thereof, and had leasure both to call the people together and to exhort them with vehement perswasions, that ifeuer they would fight for the maintenance of their liberty, they should now presently make prooffe of their valour. Hereupon hauing some fower hundred of his faction about him, he proceeded to the market place : where encountering the gouernor of the towne, he snatcht the Earles ensigne out of his hands, and tearing it in peaces, trode it vnder his feete, killing the gouernor himselfe from whome he tooke it. What should I tell you, how mightily the Earles patience was moued with this villany? The citizens & twownedwellers which were of honefter mindes and better discretion, foreseeing that all things tended to a sorrowfull issue, consulted amongst themselues, and sent certaine of their principall men to make sute to the Earle for pardon of their offence. The Earle at the first receyued them somewhat roughly, but afterward least by seueritie out of season the mischief might haue growne greater, he was content to remit the rigour of his displeasure. Whilst those men trauelled about the common benefite, *Lyon* who sought nothing but trouble and disturbance, to the intent he might know the certaine number of his followers, mustred them without the towne, and found them to be almost ten thousand. Then speaking to them in open audience many and diuerse things concerning the maintenance of their liberty, he gaue them counsell to pull downe a certaine castle ( which the Earle had lately builded ) because from thence the citty might be much annoyed : and it was no hard matter to perswade his seditious multitude. So they easily went hauing no garrison to defend it, and when they had rifled, it they set it on fire : *Lyon* in the meane time making  
show

showe as if he had beene sorrie for the fact, pretending that it happened by mischaunce, whereas in trueth it was committed of meere malice and set purpose. These tydings so troubled the Earle, that he would not endure to heare the messengers of the people speak craving pardon for this offence, as they had done for the other, but there threatned them to punishment as the fact deserued. For he had bestowed a great some of money about the building of this castle, besides the reproachfulnes of the action, wherewith his noble spirit was much more prouoked then by any other occasion. The Earle made greuous cōplaynt amongst a great company of noble men & knights assembled at *Lisle in Flaunders*, of the intollerable pride of his rebellious subiects, and of the vnworthy iniuries they had offered him; wherewith he so moued their affections, that they all with one consent promised him their vttermoſt ayd and furtherance, and to be ready prepared for any seruice wherein he would employ them. Herevpon soldiers were forthwith placed in garrisons and warres begonne; the very originall whereof, is the same which wee haue already discoursed.

When the Earles minde was thus incensed against the Flemmings, *Lyon* hauing thereby gotten greater opportunity, after he had in open assembly slaunderously inveyed against the cruelty and obstinate wilfulnesse of the aduerse party, and vnder that pretext perswaded the people that it was very necessarie to procure their neighbours to ioine with them in league and confederacie, he againe mustered his souldiers by the poule, and found them to be nerehand twelue thousand. Amongst others which followed his faction, were the men of a certaine towne called *Damme*: in which towne shortly after *Lyon* dyed very suddainly, not without suspicion of poysoning. The men of *Ipre* were likewise of his confederacy, into which towne the rebells The death of Lyon. entring by permission of the commons, slue certaine gentlemen that lay there in garrison. After *Lyon* was dead,

the *Gantoyes* created them newe captaines, and being assisted by the men of *Bruges* and many other townes which

The Earle of *Flanders* be- sieged by his subjects. tooke their parte, their number encreasing to an infinite multitude, they besieged (a long while to little purpose) the Castle of *Teremund*, wherein the Earle of *Flanders* at that time remayned. Wherefore raising their siege and

ioyning those forces to the rest of their army, they proceeded forward to the towne of *Arde*, which they streytly beleagured, and the townesmen as stoutly defended. Notwithstanding, when no way could be deuised to bring victuall to the besieged, the Earle foreseeing that the necessity thereof in conclusion would force them to yeeld, wished secretly that some conditions of peace might be procured betweene them. Hereunto also his mother the Lady of *Artoyes* was meruailously inclined: who but lately before addressing most friendly letters to the Duke of *Burgundy* (which had marryed the Earle of *Flanders* daughter) earnestly besought him that he would employ his diligent endeauour to bring this matter of agreement to effecte. For the accomplishment whereof a treaty being had at *Tournay*, after fiftene dayes spent in debating of diuerse matters (the *Gantoyes* in that while shewing themselves very arrogant & lusty) at length it was concluded to this purpose. That the *Gantoyes* should breake vp their siege before *Arde*, and within one yeare next ensuing reedify the castle which they had lately rased: and that the Earle laying aside all memory of former displeasures, should come and make his residence at *Gaunt*. The Duke of *Britaine* because he was loth by his long sojourning with the Earle of *Flanders*, to procure him the French Kings displeasure, departed from thence (as I tolde you before) into *England*. During his continuance there, he receiued verie comfortable letters from almost all the states of his countrie, solliciting his returne home againe: whereupon by the King of *Englands* aduise he returned, but not without English ayd for his better assurance and safety.

The Duke of *Britaine* returneth into his country.

When



When the Earle of *Flanders* according to his former agreement, was come to *Gaunt*, he made an eloquent oration before all the people, wherein he at large declared his good affection, (by the way lightly glauncing at their ingratitude) and withall (doing the office of a gracious Prince) exhorted them, from thenceforth to maintaine peace and tranquility in the common wealth. For his part, protesting that he would so order all his affaires, as no occasion of trouble should any way be deriued frō his proceedings. Onely this he requested with great earnestnes at their hands, that they would forbear that fashion of wearing white cappes, and cause the custome thereof to be discontinued. To all the rest of his speech they gaue quiet attention, but assoone as he talked of laying aside their cappes, yee might haue seene the colours and countenances of most of them changed. The Earle (as it is likely) perceyuing their mindes, and considering with himselfe that the seedes of discord were generally disperfed amongst them, dismissed his audience and departed out of *Gaunt*. This was a pleasant spectacle to the seditious, but the honestly affected were greatly greeued that this priuate grudge and inward debate should thus be more and more augmented.

After the Earle of *Flanders* had forsaken the towne of *Gaunt*, a certaine gentleman mooued with desire of reuenge for the death of the gouernour his kinsman lately murdered by the rebelles, made defiance to the *Gauntoys*, & by occasion set vpon certain marchants as they were sayling vp the riuer of *Skeld* with corne for prouision of the towne. He tooke the and cut off their hands & put out their eyes: which fact of his was generally interpreted by townsmen as done by the Earles direction. The seditious sort, as if hereby a gap had been opened to doe what mischiefe they listed, assembled to the number of fīue thousand men, and suddainely surprised *Arde*, (which at that time was vnfurnisht for defence, expecting no daunger in regard

the peace was so lately concluded) and when they had taken it, beat down certaine gates and towers, and that part of the wall which looked towards *Gaunt*. Then the Earle being as it were overcome, and vanquished with their intollerable outrage, after he had by his messengers directed into the Citie, layed open in plaine termes before the people, both their wicked proceedings; and his patient forbearance, proclaymed open warres and vtter enmity against them.

In the meane season those citizens which were desirous of peace, perswaded and preuailed with the rest, that to mitigate the Earles displeasure, they should make restitution of the towne they had taken, and banish certaine of the chiefe authors of the enterprise. This thing gaue the Earle some satisfaction. And for example sake, he put to death certaine commoners of the towne of *Ipre*, which had been chiefe moouers of the late insurrection. Vpon the report whereof, the rebels and ringleaders of mischief at *Gaunt*, began to mistrust that all would be amisse on their sides also. Wherefore following the counsell of one of their own stampe (who was of opinion that liberty could not be procured, but by subuersion of the nobilitie and gentlemens estates) they ouerthrew and beat downe all the Castles and gentlemens houses they could come to, and rifling their goods, diuided the spoile amongst them. The gentlemen mooued with this violent iniury, and increased in number by the losse of their substance, vpon complaint to the Earle, obtained his licence and with such power as they procured, made cruell warres vpon the *Gauntoys*. Who fearing least the Earle should procure ayd out of *France*, they sent messengers afore hand to the French King, beseeching him that he would not take armes against their common wealth; affirming that they contended with their Lord and endured the discommodities of warre, not vpon any wilfull obstinacy, but in desire to maintaine their liberty. The french King being already scarce well pleased with  
the

the Earle of *Flaunders* for harbouring the Duke of *Britaine*, both condiscended to their requests, and gaue them encouragement. Pope *Clement* also, whome the Earle had refused to acknowledge, was nothing forgetfull thereof, but kept it in mind against occasion should serue, to worke him as great a displeasure.

When the Duke of *Britaine* (as we haue told you) being called home by his subiects letters, was returned into his country, the King of *England* according to promise sent a number of souldiers to his succour : but by violence of tēpest they were driuen back into *England*. The duke in the meane while not knowing hereof, and wondering at the occasion of their delay, sollicitied the King againe for ayd. Herevppon the King sent on of his vncles, (the youngest son of King *Edward*) and with him six thousand men. After he had passed through a good part of *Fraunce*, when he approched nere his enemy the Duke of *Burgandy*, the French Kings brother ; the Duke was desirous to haue giuen him battell ; but the French King for weighty considerations commanded the contrary, presupposing it would come to passe that they might be disseuered of themselves. And as he was indued with a kind of fortunate discretion for the managing of his affaires, he practised by his letters as secretly as might be with the men of *Nants*, (a rich and populous Citie in those quaters) putting them in remembrance of their dutie, and earnestly desiring them that they would not take part with his enemies against him. They in regard of their affection to *Fraunce*, promised assurance of their good will and faithfull endeauour, thereby discharging the kings mind of al doubts, and that they might better make resistance against their enemies, they requested him to send a conuenient number of souldiers to remaine with them in garrison. The Englishmen after a combersome iourney and many difficulties, at length arriued in *Britaine*. My author reporteth that the Englishmen were wont to obserue this custome: that when they went forth to warfare

King *Richard*  
aydeth the  
Duke of *Britaine*.

*Thomas* of  
*Woodstocke*  
the Earle of  
*Buckingham*.



fare into any forraine country, they were solemnly sworne to their King, first to conceale and in any wise to keepe secret all counsels and purposes concerning the seruice vnderaken : and then that they should conclude no absolute peace with the enemy, but with the consent and approbation of their King and his nobility.

As the Englishmen (according to my former speech) were marching through the middest of *France* towards *Britaine*, King *Charles* the wisest and most prudent Prince of his times, fell greuously sicke. It is declared before how certaine of the King of *Nauarres* frends had giuen him poyson. The operation of which poyson was so violent, that both his haire and his nailes fell off, and his body became so withered, that scarce the image of a man remained. Neuertheles the Emperour sent him a certaine Germane phisition, who abated the force thereof in such sort, both nayles and haire and health also by little and little returned. But his body could neuer be so cleerely purged, but some part of the venome remained, which being drawne into his arme, distilled out at an issue made for the purpose. And the phisition told him at his departure, that whensoever that issue dried vp, he should not liue long after. Therefore despairing of health, and feeling his own weaknes, he sent for his brethren the dukes of *Burgundy* and *Berry*, with the Duke of *Burbon*, to whome he spake in this manner : (as for the Duke of *Aniow* because he seemed so gripple and couetous, he desired not his presence.) I feele vndoubtedly my deere brothers, that I cannot long continue amongst you. Therefore I commend *Charles* my sonne to your tuition, beseeching you that you will be alwaies assistant to him with your wisdome and counsell, as it becommeth vncles to assist their nephew which must vndergoe the weight of so great a burthen, and that in to tender yeeres as he can no waies be able to helpe himselfe. Assoone as I am dead, let it be your care to see him crowned: for in you I repose all my trust and confidence, Ye see he

King *Charles*  
the 5. dyeth  
of poyson-  
taken long be-  
fore.

His speech at  
his death.

is but a very child, and therefore shall stand in need of good bringing vp and wholesome instruction. So let him be taught, and trayned vp in all points pertaining to the office of a king, as it may appeare to the world that you haue performed your duties. And for a wife when time shall serue and yeeres be fitting, let me entreat you to make his choice, for birth and estate such a one, as by her match the realme may rather be honoured, then impayred. I haue had much conference with a certaine Astronomer of great learning and iudgement; who told me, that in the time of his youth he should be put to much trouble and disquietnes, and should escape many casualties of fortune. Surely I haue often and very much considered with my selfe, by what occasions such things should come to passe. For at this present through the diuine fauour, ye haue a state reasonable quiet and letled. Of *Flanders* I know not what to thinke: the Duke of *Britaine* is subtil, a friend to the English, an enemy to vs: therefore it is behoouefull that ye retaine the cheefe Cities of *Britaine* in loue and amitie, for by this meanes shall the Dukes counsellors be frustrate. Surely the Britons deserue to be commended, and are worthy to be well esteemed: for they haue alwaies done me faithfull seruice, both in defending my kingdome, and pursuing my enemies. Send into Germanie, to prouide a wife for my sonne in those quarters, that by such meanes the bond of league and frendshippe betwixt vs may be more strongly combined. Ye haue heard how the King of *England* takes the same course, and seekes a wife from thence, that he may strengthen and establish his affaires by such alliance. This realme of ours (as we see) is much disquieted, and suffereth many displeasures by the English: I beseech you endeour to take away all such occasions of warre and enmity. For howsoeuer I may seeme to haue nourished warres, yet in my heart I haue vtterly abhorred them, and the thought thereof at this present moues no small remorse in my conscience. These and many other things

N

were

1380.

were spoken by him to the like effect. The Duke of *Aniow* was absent as I told you a little before, notwithstanding by messengers that went and came, hee easily vnderstood how all things passed : and vpon aduertisement from some of his friends remayning at the Court, he came to *Paris* the same day that the King ended his life. As soone as he heard certainly that the King was dead, incontinently he seized vpon all the kings apparell and iewelles and whatsoeuer else was there of worth or value. For at the same time he had determined vpon a iourney into *Naples*, towards the furniture whereof he had need of many such necessaries, especially being so augmented in honour as he was lately before by the gift of Pope *Clement*.

1380.

The coronation of Charles the sixt.

Now although it were appointed by the kings will who should haue the administration of his goods, yet neuertheless the duke of *Aniow* took it vpon him, & his brothers did not greatly gainsay him, peraduēture in respect he was their elder. Afterward it was decreed by the Peeres of the Realme, that so soone as the coronation of their new King were finished, the gouernment of the state should be committed to his vncles, to remaine in their hands till the king came to one and twentie yeares of age. To the coronation of this King were called *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*, the Earle of *Savoy*, and the dukes of *Gelders* and *Iuliers* : there were also present *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Braband*, with the duke of *Lorraine*, the Earle of *Marche*, and others. The Earle of *Flaunders* excused himselfe. The young King was then twelue yeares old, he had one brother, and one sister, both, by father and Mother ; their names were *Lewis*, and *Katherine*. After these solemnities ended, great consultation was had about matters concerning the honour and safety of the kingdome. At length it was concluded, that the duke of *Berry* should gouerne all that prouince which is commonly called *Languedoc*, the duke of *Burgoyne* should rule *Picardy* and *Normandy*, and the duke of *Aniow* remaining about the kings person, should haue the chiefe



gouernment of the whole kingdome.

King *Charles* was a Prince so wise and prudent, that sitting in his gowne at *Paris* in ease and quiennes, he recouered many things by counsell and policie, which his predecessors fighting themselves in the field with all the forces they could make, had lost before in battell, to their enemies. And amongst other vexations which happened to King *Edward* at his last voyage that he intended into *Britaine* for the rescue of his men besieged, when he was forced backe by the extremitie of weather : this one thing troubled him aboue the rest, that he must make warre with such an enemy as neuer bare armes, nor came into the field : wherevpon it is reported he should say, that he neuer delt with any enemy which vsed so little armor and put him to so much trouble. For indeed King *Charles* after he came to the crowne, neuer put on armour himselfe, but manning all his affaires by wisdom and policy, committed the execution thereof to his brothers.

The cōment-  
dation of  
King *Charles*  
the 5.

---

*Charles the sixt.*

---

**I**T is shewed before how the youngest sonne of King *Edward* passed with his forces through *Fraunce* into *Britaine* to ayd the Duke : who albeit he were recalled by his subiects (as I told you) yet the King of *Fraunce* wrought so much by his policy that he found small faithfulness, and but cold affection in many of them, especially in the people of *Nants* and some others. When the duke discoursed of his vnfortunate aduentures, and the subtilty of his enemies proceedings, the King of *Englands* sonne alwaies comforted him and promised assurance of friendship and succour. So they agreed betweene themselves

*Thomas Earle*  
of *Buckingham*.

*Nants* besieged.

to besiege the towne of *Nants* with both their forces united together, and the Englishmen went about it without further delay. The Duke of *Britaine* in the meane time solicited his people to furnish him with succours for the proceeding in his enterprise. But they made him answer, that they would in no wise waste their owne country for the Englishmens pleasures, and that they would neuer take armes in his quarell so long as the Englishmen lingred in *Britaine*. This was the very occasion and impediment which made him breake promise with the English. And the King of *Englands* sonne meruailing what the matter meant, began to be somewhat offended, especially because there came no newes at all from the duke (the messengers which carried letters between them being indeed cut off by the way.) At length after long and dayly expectation when he had spent two moneths in the siege, finding that all he could do of himselfe was but labour lost, vnlesse more forces came from his confederate, leauing his enterprise vnperformed, he himselfe tooke his iourney to the duke, intending to know directly what was his purpose & resolution. The Duke aduisedly purged himselfe, imputing the blame to his people, by whose treachery being deceiued, he was not able to performe his promise. Neuerthelesse, to render his friend some satisfaction, he gaue him leaue to winter with his army at *Vannes*.

During the time that *Nants* was besieged, certaine noble men of *Britaine* of more eminent respect and authority then the rest, had some communication with their Prince in these words, or the like. Sir, you sufficiently declare and manifestly shew, that you are wholly addicted to the English nation. But what fruite or commodity, what honour or aduancement, doe you expect from their friendship? what motiues induce you to obserue them with such affection? For when you haue brought the into *Britaine*, they shall bereaue you of your goods, and dispossesse you of your inheritance descended from your ancestors,

ancestors, and this they will doe if euer they obtaine the vpper hand of the French men. Let the King of *Nauarres* example moue you: who in regard of the singular good opinion he had conceiued of their faithfulness, committed into their hands the towne and castle of *Chirburg*: whereinto being once admitted, they would neuer out of it but held it for euer after as their owne. By like occasion, if through your sufferance and fauour they be once receiued into our citties here, neuer perswade your selfe that they will at any time forgoe them: for they may alwaies haue ayd out of their owne country at pleasure, whereby their courage shall be refreshed, & their forces renewed. We neede not seeke farre for a president: see you not how they detain *Brest*, a towne entirely of your owne seigniory and iurisdiction? But when will they finde time to restore it againe? assure your selfe for certainty they intend nothing lesse. Let this therefore be your warning, and holde your selfe well appayd that you are beloued of your people, who are resolutely of this minde and purpose, neuer to forsake the French king to pleasure the English, will you for your wiues sake, because you haue marryed an English woman, take a course to ouerthrow your selfe and your estate? will you therefore aduenture the losse of so goodly and large an heritage, for the keeping whereof you haue sustayned so many perills and so great dangers? will you be at the charge to maintaine soldiers perpetually? what are you able to performe of your selfe, when your subiects shall forsake you, yea and take armes and fight against you also? But omitting all these reasons and considerations: the French King is now dead which was so vehemently incensed against you, and in his place his sonne succeeded, who is yet very young and of no euill disposition, we will apply our endeauours to reconcile you vnto him, that friendship and amity may be established betweene you. So shall it come to passe, that both you shall enioy your owne without trouble or disturbance, and these English-



men finding their expectations and purpose preuented, shall get them home into their country.

The Duke although he were much moued with this kinde of discourse, yet dissembled the matter for feare of giuing offence to the English. And the noble men which had giuen him this counsell, thinking it was no time to vse longer delay, posted secretly to the French King lying then at *Paris*, where declaring what had passed, they treated for peace. The English generall not knowing what was in hand, purposed against the next spring to haue had new supplies out of *England*, and to haue made sharper warres in *Fraunce* then before. The French men themselues mistrusted as much: foreseeing that at one time or other some great mischief would befall them from the English. The *Britons* which negotiated with the King for agreement, perceiuing that such a matter was feared in *Fraunce* (like discret commissioners who obserue all things diligently in such occasions, and apply the same to their owne advantage) in their treaty of peace, did meruailously exaggerate that point, and with great pollicy, insomuch that by mentioning such matters and casting doubts thereupon, they had the French King farre easier to be delt with in all their affaires. The Duke of *Aniow* (as I told you) was chiefe in authoritie: who for that he was purposed shortly after to take his iourney into *Calabria* and the other prouinces which he had obtained in gift from the Pope, intended nothing lesse then that *Fraunce* should be troubled with any new warres, by occasion whereof he might lose the opportunity of performing what he had before determined. Therefore accepting the counsell of the *Briton* commissioners, so much rather for the doubts of future warre which they had suggested into his opinion, he willingly concended to the motion of agreement. So it was concluded, to this effect: that the Duke of *Britaine* being receiued into the French kings fauour, should do homage to him for his Dukedome, with performance of all rights belonging to such

The Duke of  
*Britaine* recō-  
ciled to the  
French king,

such ceremonies. And further, to the intent that the English generall (who vpon the Dukes request had trauelled such an infinite compasse of ground to come to his ayd) might in some sort be honourably satisfied, it was permitted to the Duke to furnish him with ships and all other things necessary for the conueying of him and his people againe into his country. The English generall seeing himselfe thus deluded, and deceiued, would admit no excuses, but full of indignation, hoysed sayles to the winde & made homeward into *England*.

forfaketh the English.

About this time the Earle of *Flanders* was exceedingly incensed against the *Gauntoyes* for their intollerable proud and arrogant demeanor. It happened the same time very fortunately for him, that variance rose amongst the men of *Bruges*, betweene the Aldermen and the Commons: insomuch that the magistrate wrote letters to the Earle, instantly desiring his presence. Whereupon he came, and hauing put to death some fiue hundreth one & other, he receiued the towne into his protection, with certain other of their neighbors which were desirous of the like fauour. Being therefore emboldened by the accession of these forces, he determined to chastice the men of *Ipre*, who had slaine certaine gentlemen of his household, and receiued the *Gauntoyes* into their towne. At their request, the *Gauntoyes* their confederates sent three thousand men to ayd them. The Earles army with the helpe of the men of *Bruges* amounted well nere to the number of twenty thousand. The *Gauntoyes* therefore augmented their power likewise by leuying nine thousand more: and so proceeding some miles on their way, they sent word to their fellowes, that they should also bring forth their men into the field, that so with vnited forces they might ioyntly assaile their enemy. There came forth some eight thousand, who when they had marched a while in order of battell, arriuing at a three-way lecte, and consulting among themselves which way was to be taken, at length they followed the same which

which was forelayd before by any ambush of the Earles souldiers : whereinto being once falne, before they could cleere themselves from the daunger, and come to ioyne with their confederates, they lost three thousand of their men, the rest hardly escaping by flight. The party which gaue them counsell to enter that passage, being accused of treason for his labour, was by the people in their furie and vprore admitting no excuse, miserably slaine and torne in peeces one limme from another, euery man snatching some part to wreake his particular malice. The vnhappy wretch (doubtlesse) had this punishment vnderfuerd : for had he committed such a villany, surely he would neuer haue trusted himselfe in their hands afterward.

After this good successe, the Earle forthwith addressed himself to the siege of *Ipre*, now whilst they were all in this feare & perplexity. But the men of *Ipre* terrified with the late accident, submitted themselves to his mercy. Being receiued into the towne, he put to death some 700 commoners, and sent three hundreth or thereabouts of the wealthier sort, prisoners to *Bruges*. Many other townes following the example of *Ipre*, yeelded themselves likewise to his obedience. The *Gauntioyes* therefore which now in a manner alone stood out against him, were besieged, but it could not be done so streytly, but that victuall and provision might freely be conueyd into the towne at one gate or another. For the place is naturally very strong, both in regard of the ground wherupon it is scituate, and the commoditie of two riuers called *Skeld* and *Lise* running by it : therefore he had neede of a very populous army that should enuiron it on all sides. The townesmen mustered themselves by poule, and there were found of such as for their yeares were able to beare armes, to the number of fourescore thousand. They so little esteemed the siege that euen then whilst their enemies lay before the cittie, they went forth and sacked certaine townes of *Flaunders*. Amongst others the men of *Bruxelles* fauoured them ex-



ceedingly: and the *Liegeois* also would surely haue sent them succour, but that the great distance betweene them was a hinderance to their purpose. The Earle perceiuing he did but lose time and labour in besieging *Gaunt*, for that the winter also approached, brake vp his siege & dispersed his army. In the beginning of the next spring he leuyed some twenty thousand men and besieged *Gawre*. The captaine that lay there in garrison desired helpe of the *Gauntoyes*, and they presently sent a band of six thousand: who falling by chaunce vpon some six hundreth soldiers of *Arde*, which vpon commandement were marching in great haste towards the Earle, oppressed them with their multitude, and slue them euery one. Besides this, one *Peter de Boys*, *ter de Bois* a valiant fellowe, receiuing other six thousand men of the *Gauntoyes*, had couenanted with him that went before to the reliefe of *Gawre*, that he should not fight with the Earle, but ioynly together with both their forces. But the other notwithstanding, hearing that his enemy approached ready to giue battell, was so enflamed with desire of honor, that without further expecting the company of his assistant, though his owne power were far too weake for such an encounter, yet he put his men in order against the enemy. The Earle diuided his battell into fise squadrons, in euery of which were foure thousand soldiers, and giuing charge vpon his enemies, albeit they valiantly defended themselues, yet by reason of their small number, vnable to sustaine so great violence, he soone ouerthrew them and put them to flight. His horsemen pursued the chace with great cruelty: and when they had withdrawn themselues for refuge into a certaine monastery therby, the Earle because none of the whole rout should escape, caused fire to be set onall the housing about it. There were two Captaines ouer these forces, whereof the one fighting valiantly at the gate of the place was there slaine, the other which had gotten himselfe vp into a tower, was compelled at length by violence of the flame which had now

caught

caught hold of euery thing about him, to leape down headlong amongst the thickest of his enemies, where being receiued vpon their pikes and swordes points, he was hoysed vp againe into the fyre and so ended his life. All the rest perished miserably in the fire, three hundreth onely excepted which tooke their flight directly homeward toward *Gaunt*, and so escaped. This *Peter de Boys* whom we spake of, being not farre off, saw in what distresse his fellowes remained, and beheld the sad spectacle of their destruction but by reason of a riuer and certaine marishes betweene, he was not able to come time enough to their rescue. For which cause as soone as he came home with his company to *Gaunt*, he had like to haue beene slaine by the common people. But he alledged such reasonable excuse, that he gaue them contentment, and withall perswaded them, that in regard they had lost two expert men of warre in this defeat, they should authorise some one other by whose industry they thought the affaires of the common weale might be better directed: for so it was needfull hauing to deal with such a cruell enemy.

The Earle dismissing a good part of his army, sent the rest into garrisons, but especially to the defence of *Arden*. In the meane time about twelue hundred of the faction of the white cappes, hauing aduertisement what time certaine gentlemen would raunge abroad out of *Arden* to fetch in some booty, brake out of an ambush vpon them as they returned with their prey, and put most of them to the sword. But they escaped not scotfree with this trick: for themselves being circumuented with like policy, by the companions of those that were slaine few or none of them returned to boast of their enterprize.

The wealthyer and honestest sort of citzizens in *Gaunt* did greatly lament (though secretly to themselves) that the state of their common weale was thus crazed and shaken, their Captaines and men of warre being from time to time killed vp, and themselves also by little and little

consumed by the Earle of *Flaunders*. For such rascalles  
and base varlets as in time of peace were of no reputation,  
but rather esteemed as beggers, by reason of their num-  
ber and power, were now in chiefe authoritie and ruled  
all things in the cittie at their pleasure. And because  
in these troublesome affayres they might both do & com-  
maund what they listed, they were well pleased with this  
bloudy spectacle of daily tumult and insurrection. More-  
ouer *Peter de Boys* the very well-spring of mischief, con-  
sidering with himselfe that howsoever matters should fall  
out, and though the Earle were reconciled to the *Gauntoys*,  
yet he should hardly escape without perill of his life, be-  
gan to looke about for a fellow whom he might commēd  
to the people for their purpose, such a one indeede as  
could stirre sedition cunningly, and would persist in the  
maintenance thereof to the vitermost. At last he bethought  
himselfe of *Phillip de Artenill*, the sonne of *Iaques* often  
heretofore mentioned; who albeit in regard of his dispo-  
sition and sufficiency, he were a fellow fit for such employ-  
ment, yet because his father was slaine (in such sort as we  
haue formerly declared) by the *Gauntoyes*, hee alwaies  
kept himselfe within the compasse of a priuate life. In e-  
very place as on passed through the cittie, a man might  
haue heard the peoples words wishing againe either for  
*Iaques* whom they had already killed, or some other such  
like whom they might follow as their captaine and gouer-  
nor. *Boys* making vse hereof to his aduantage, brake the  
matter to some of his owne faction, but not before such  
time as he had conferred with *Phillip*, whome by declaring  
these circumstances, proposing great rewards, and setting  
before his eies what honour he might obtaine by this  
meanes in such a cittie as *Gannt*, he easily allured to his  
purpose. The next day he began to commend *Phillip* to  
the people, taking occasion at his father *Iaques*, how there  
was neuer any who with greater fidelity had gouerned the  
state of *Flaunders* then he: wherof the old men of the coun-  
try

*Phillip of  
Artenill.*



try, to whome the truth thereof was knowne, could sufficiently beare witnesse how he had alwaies most earnestly defended the honour and profit of the country, which could not possibly haue escaped extreame miserie long agoe, had it not beene preserued by the wisedome of that one man alone, wherefore for his part he thought his countrey should not doe amisse to choose an impe of the same stocke ( being no worse then it was ) to place in the common wealth for the maintenance of publike welfare. Through these perswasions the people made choise of *Phillip* to be their Captaine.

It is declared before how *John* the sonne of *Henry* king of *Castile*, was by generall consent of the state admitted to the succession of the crowne. This much displeased *Ferdinando* King of *Portugall*, who held it a great indignity that the sonne of a bastard should be exalted to the gouernment of so great a dominion, and the lawfull Kings daughters be disinherited the while: of whome as we haue sayd before, the Duke of *Lancaster* had married one, and his brother the other. Moued therefore with the vnworthiness of the matter, and also because he was alyed in bloud to the Ladies, he proclaymed warres against the King of *Spaine*, desiring ayd of the King of *England*, who sent his vncke the Earle of *Cambridge* with an army, hauing also in his company *Isabell* his wife and *John* his sonne. The Duke of *Lancaster* was sent into *Scotland* to treat with the Scottish King for the renewing of peace, or at least wise to take a truce for a season. During his absence, there sprung vp a most perillous insurrection, the occasion whereof in effect was this. The country people in those places ( as in diuerse others ) hold their liuinges of the Nobilitie and Gentlemen, in such sort that they are bound both to till their lands, to sell the corne, to gather it together, bestowe it in their barnes, thresh it, dresse it, and whatsoeuer else belongs vnto it, they are also bound to cut their wood and carry it home to the

Edmond of  
Langley.

their Landlords houses. Now the same time there was a certain masse priest called *Sir Iohn Wallis*, who had preached in his sermons to the people, that equalitie ought to be obserued in all things, that one man was no better then another, the gentleman then the churle, the rich then the poore, the learned then the ignorant: but all men were deriued frō the selfe same parents, euen *Adam & Eve*, and that our first fore-fathers liued all after one sort, without any ine quality of state, or difference of persons. Herewithall he perswaded them to assemble in great number, and make suite to the King for redresse, who because he was young, might perhaps be brought to harken to their requests, or if he would not, then to set themselues at libertie by the sword. This priest being apprehended and committed to prison for these matters, was by the Archbishop of *Canterburie* let loose, vpon what conscience I know not, but sutelie it procued to his owne sorrow and confusion. For after he was once abroad, he proceeded with his enterpryse more boldlie then before. The poorer sort of the Londoners for enuie they bare to the rich (as it is commonly seene) commended this course of the rebelles, and by letters sollicitied them to come to London, promising to giue them entrance into the Citie. Herevppon gathering their company together both out of all the country adioining, and from some places further of, wel neere to the number of threescore thousand, they came to *Canterburie* a towne of their owne faction, and there spoiled the shrine of *Saint Thomas*. Next daie marching forwards, they beat down to the ground all houses in their way which belonged not to some of their conspiracie, and which way soeuer they went they compelled all husbandmen to be pertakers of their proceedings. At *Rocheſter* they tooke a certaine knight by force, and made him to become their leader: and for assurance that he should not deceiue them, made him deliuer his children into their hands for pledges. When they came within a little of London, they sent him to the King with this mes-

*Sir Iohn  
Newton* cap-  
taine of the  
Castle of *Ro-  
cheſter*.  
At *Black-  
heath*.

sage, that they were minded to haue some speech with him concerning weightie affaires, and therefore that he should come forth and talke with them. The King vppon deliberation, made aunswere that he would performe their request. So the next day accompanied with certaine lords he entred his barge, and rowing neere the place where they were descended to the shore in great number expecting his comming, he demaunded of them what they would with him? They required that he would come out of his barge to parlie, and then their demands should be declared vnto him. But the King distrusting their multitude, without any further communication returned backe againe. Then being more vehemently moued, they hastned to London, making spoile of some lawyers and gentlemens houses in their way. And when they approched the Citie, finding the gates shut against them, they threatned to set fire on the suburbs, with the cruellest effects of their furie besides, and that if they entred by force, it should be to the vtter destruction of all that were in it. The Citizens herewith dismaid, especially considering that a great number within inclined to sedition and tumult, gaue them entrance. They were no sooner come in but presentlie they raunged through all the tauernes and tipling houses and fell to drinking and making good cheere, no man presuming so much as once to say them nay of any thing. The Captaines in the mean while with some twentie thousand, marching through the middest of the Citie, set fire on the duke of *Lancasters* house, and some others which they burned to the ground. They put all strangers to the sword and rifled the houses of the Exchangers. In the euening they assembled themselues altogether againe in a company before the tower (where the King then remained, and with him a great number of the chiefe of the citie) openly protesting that they would neuer from thence till such time as they had obtained their purpose. The King & some others thought it best to haue set vpon them in the night season as they

*What Tiler.  
Jack Strawe  
& Iohn Ball.  
The Sauoy.*

*At Saint Katherineines.*



they lay negligently dispersed and vnarmed, ouerwhelmed with sleepe & drunkēnes, and so to haue defeated them. Others to whome this attempt seemed daungerous and of great vncertainty in the euent, iudged it better that means were made to pacifie them with some gentle and plaufible oration. And this counsell tooke effect. The day following the King sent them word, that as many as would speake with him should repaire to a certaine place where he would meeete them, and giue satisfaction to their demaunds. Many came, and many taried still in the citie, especially the cheefe captaines of the sedition : who as soone as the King was gone forth, followed with some fower hundreth of their companions. brake into the tower, and there surprising the Archbishop of *Canterburie* Lord Chancellor of *England*, they cut of his head, and serued diuers others also of great account in the same sort, whose heads they priet vpon polles, and set them vp vpon the bridge, and other places of greatest view and most resort in the citie. When the King came to communication with the rebells, he demaunded gently of them, what they required? Marry (quoth they) that thou set vs and our Children and our posteritie that shall come after vs at libertie for euer, and being so enlarged, maintaine and preferue vs from all manner of bondage and seruitude, either in shew, or substance. The King promised to fulfill their requests, and therevpon signed & deliuered vnto them certain writings and charters for the same, wherewith a great part of them were reasonably well satisfied, and began to be much more tractable. But the principall heads of rebellion which, as I told you, abode still behinde, being villaines of most wicked disposition, whose only desire was to make a prey of rich mens goods, had drawn together in the meane time some twentie thousand with part of the comminalty intending to haue false to risling presently. But the King comming vnawares (though not out of season) vpon them, as he returned from parly with the rebells at the place appointed without the  
Mile end.  
*Wat Tyler,*  
*Jack Straw,*  
*& Iohn Ball.*  
*Simon Sud-*  
*bury.*  
citie,

It was in  
Smithfield.  
*Wat Tyler.*

*William  
Walworth.*

citie, espying such a multitude together, paused a while to vnderstand the matter. Immediately one of those varlets stepping forth, began to talke to him in a very rude and contemptuous fashon, hauing formerly giuen in charge to his companions, that at a certaine signe or watchworde which he would giue them, they should rush violently forth and kill all that were about the King, whom only he would haue spared in regard of his age. As he continued in his arrogant speeches and behauiour to the King, the Mayor of the Citie disdainng thereat, thrust him through with his sword. Then might ye haue seene the enraged multitude in a blind furie euen ready to haue destroyed them all: but the King pacified them pressing himselfe alone into the thickest of them, which otherwise perhaps might haue seemed a point of indiscretion; but the successe warranted the action. Many counselled the King to haue pursued them in their departure, and to haue set vpon them as they were separated and dispersed. But the king would not allow of that course, nor suffer any violence as then to be vsed towards them: thinking that with more ease and better leisure he might take punishment of them at his pleasure hereafter. Neither were all offenders alike: for, as in such commotions it happeneth, a great sort were taken vp by the way perforce, and compelled to go along with the rest for company. And he vsed this gentlenesse the rather because the chiefe captaines and ringleaders of this mischief, beeing detected by the people, they onely might be put to death, and the residue be pardoned.

*Gaunt besieged by the  
Earle of  
Flaunders.*

The Earle of *Flaunders* once again besieged *Gaunt*, assembling men of warre out of *Henault* and *Artoys*, the Lordship wherof was lately befallne him by the death of his mother. In the meane time a certaine Captaine of his, winning a little village belonging to the *Gauntoys* called *Grantmont*, slue all that were in it, euery one both old men, women, and Children, not sparing so much as women with childe, and those that lay sicke in their beds. The churches were

were destroyed with fire, and the towne layd leuell with the ground. It happened the author of this so miserable and vnmercifull spectacle, in a certaine skirmish (such as there were many) falling into an ambush of the *Gauntoys*, to be slaine. The Earle taking his death very greuously (for he had not any man about him whome he more deerely esteemed) brake vp his siege, conceiuing greater displeasure against the *Gauntoys* then before. Neuerthelesse by mediation of the Lords of *Henault* and *Braband*, and vppon the earnest sute of the people, peace was againe concluded. Amongst other articles this was one, that within fifteen daies after, the *Gauntoys* should deliuer two hundreth persons such as the Earle should nominate, to be disposed of at his pleasure. *Peter de Bloys* and *Phillip of Artenill* hauing secret intelligence hereof, and suspecting themselves might be some of the number, provided a competent crew of their faction to be in a readinesse at all assayes, and the next morning when the articles of peace were read publicly in the Towne-house, they entred in strongly accompanied, and slue two Aldermen of great account : the same which were chiefe agents for the towne in this treaty of agreement. With this fact the Earle was so exceedingly prouoked that it seemd from thence forth he would neuer haue come to any composition with the *Gauntoyes* before he had vtterly rooted out the whole rabble of that seditious generation.

About this time happened an insurrection in *Paris* : the Commotion citizens requiring that the late subsidy and new exactions in *Paris*. imposed vppon them, might be taken away, from paiment wherof they pleaded immunity by a graunt they had obtained from King *Charles* the fift, which they said the new King at his coronation had likewise confirmed. The King to whome it was vnpleasing and tedious to liue amongst contentious persons, departed out of *Paris* to *Meaulx*. The people in the meane while rising in an vprore, brake vp the prisons, let out the prisoners, and killed certaine of



The Lord  
Cency.

the kings officers. At length a certaine noble man of the court who was very well beloued of the people, being sent to appease the tumult, dealt with the citzens in such sort, that they were content in regard of the necessity of the time, to disburse weekly ten thousand franks towards the maintenance of the king warres and paiement of his souldiers. Another vpror happened also at *Roan* not vnlike to this at *Paris*, but it was suppressed by the King himselfe. Many Cities and common wealths following the footsteps of the *Gauntoys* (whome they extolled with high cōmendation as most stout defenders of their liberty) rebelled against their magistrates. Behold to what ruine all things tended, if by the industrie of valiant Princes, these euils had not been restrained.

The Earle of *Cambridge* of whome we spake before, making a long passage for want of good weather, after he had been much tossed vppon the seas with the contrary winds, at last arriued with all his souldiers at *Lisbone* in *Portugall*. When he had taried there certaine moneths, the King of *Portingale* bestowed all his men in garrisons, giuing commandement that they should not attempt any thing against the enemy without his knowledge and direction. The englishmen and Gascoines vnacquainted with idlenesse, and desirous to be employed in some exercise of armes, vppon a time when they could not obtayne licence of the King, went forth of their owne heads, and winning certaine holds of the Spaniards, placed garrisons in them and returned. No other memorable seruice was performed of many moneths after, by meanes whereof the King of *Spaine* had time and leisure more then enough, to make sufficient preparation for his defence. He had ayd also sent him out of *Fraunce*, which was allowed free passage through *Aragon* by reason of the league that was confirmed between both kings vppon conclusion of the marriage, as we haue discoursed already.

The King of *England* sending ambassadours into *Germany*

many

many, to *Charles* King of *Bohemia*, requested to haue his sister to wife. The matter was debated a twelue moneth and more, and at last tooke effect. The french King to the intent to hinder this marriage, gaue commaundement to the *Normans* to enter the seas with a puissant fleet, and to intercept the new Bride with all her traine in their passage. But the Duke of *Brabant*, putting him in mind how vnfitting it were for his honour to attempt such an enterprise against a company of silly women vnable to make resistance: partly by the iustnesse of his request, and partly by intreaty and perswasion, diuerted the king from his purpose.

King *Richard* marrieth *Anne* sister to *Charles* King of *Bohemia*.

It was covenanted between the King and the *Parisians*, that the mony which they were to pay weekly should be kept by the treasurer of the Citie, and no part of it to be expēded about any other occasiō but only in time of necessity for the maintenance of men of warre. Now the french King when he should send his succours into *Spaine*, required the treasurer to disburse an hundreth thousand franks for the vse of that seruice. The treasurer neither refusing, nor performing, delayed the matter with friuolous excuses. The duke of *Aniow* at that time standing in great fauour with the people, to the intent the more commodiously to furnish himselfe for his journey into *Naples*, wrought secretly in such sort, that no part of this money was sent to the King: but hauing all the authority in his owne hands, found meanes to bring the matter so about, that the whole summe which the King demaunded, was without any grudging deliuered to himselfe. Being therefore plentifully furnished with all things needfull, and hauing gathered together about thirtie thousand men, he proceeded on his voyage. When he arriued at *Aniow* where Pope *Clement* then remained, he found the hearts of the nobility meruailously inclined towards him. Afterward leauing *Prouence*, he passed through *Italy* into *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which countries when with most earnest affection of the people he had taken possession, he tooke his way towards *Naples*. But the Neapolitanes

The Duke of *Aniow* taketh his iourney into *Italy*.

litanes were altogether addicted to his aduersarie, *Charles* the King of *Hungaries* nephewe heretofore mentioned. This *Charles* after the death of the Queene of *Naples*, who left no issue of her owne to enioye her inheritance, vsurped the title and dominion of all these seigniories : affirming that the Popes gifte to the Duke of *Aniow* was for twoo especiall causes of no force nor value. First, because it was not in the deceased Queenes power to alienate those things that were not her owne : which opinion of his the Neapolitanes and Sicilians stoutly mayntained. And againe, though it had beene most free for her to dispose of them all at her pleasure, yet because in those countries they acknowledged *Vrbane* for chiefe bishop, and not *Clement* to whome and from whome that conveyance was made, the gift must necessarily be voyd and frustrate. *Charles* had long before furnished with all manner of prouision a certaine castle called *Leuf*, planted (as the people say) by art Magicke, encompassed on euery side with the sea and so impregnablely fortified, that by any other means then by such like skill, it was impossible to be conquered. Into this castle abundantly stored with all necessaries for certain yeares, he withdrew himselfe and his retinue: taking no great thought for the rest, in regard he was wel assured that the Neapolitanes would neuer forsake him, and as for *Calabria* though he lost it for the present, yet after a yeere or two he made no question to recouer it. For he knew the Duke must alwaies maintaine a great army in pay for feare of rebellion, which he could not long continue, but either want of money or victuall would force him to great inconuenience. So that his power being weakened and his numbers dispersed, he might easily be overthrowne and driuen out of the country. But there was a certaine coniurer which promised the Duke of *Aniow* to blinde the eies of them in the Castle, in such sorte as they should belieue there was a bridge made ouer frō the main land, by meanes whereof they should be compelled to yeeld

*Zeus* an enchanted castle: see *Frois*: *Chro*: Lib: 2. Cap: 391.

This enchaunter by such like illusions had



yeeld for feare. But by procurement of the Earle of *Sanoy* ( who accompanied the Duke in that expedition ) he was put to death for a like peece offeruice which he had done long before.

before caused  
the Queene  
of *Naples* and  
her husband  
to yeild vp  
the same ca-  
stle into the  
hands of  
*Charles. Froß.*  
*Chro. lib. 2. cap*  
*346. & 392.*

The Englishmen and *Gascones* hauing taryed almost nine moneths in *Portingale* without performing any notable exployt, like men that hated such slothfulnes, determined once againe to aduenture forth against the *Spaniards*. Their Captaine the Earle of *Cambridge*, when they acquainted him with the matter was against it, but they neuerthelesse went forward with their purpose, and hauing good successe brought certaine townes in subiection. After their returne, they complayned that their entertaynement was not payd them. The king of *Portingale* halfe angry because they aduentured without his commission, made shew as if he would not haue contented them. Whereupon some counselled to forrey the country & take out their wages in pillage; but others of more stayed iudgment and sounder discretion perswaded the contrary, and so at length by intreaty they obtayned that which they were purposed to haue gotten by violence. After this the King of *Portingale* leuyed an army of fifteene thousand besides the English: and the King of *Spaine* hauing a power of thirty thousand, bad him battell. Both their forces came into the field, and many dayes together light skirmishes passed betweene them. But the king of *Portingale* because his enemies forces were more in number then his, would in no wise ioyne with him in a sette battell. The Duke of *Lancaster* ( whom this matter chiefly concerned, in regard he marryed the eldest daughter of *Don Pietro* ) had promised his brother at his setting forth towards *Spaine*, that as soone as he had dispatcht his affaires in *Scotland*, he would come thither also himselfe, and bring an other army. His comming the king of *Portingale* expected. But by reason of the late insurrection, the state being somewhat troublesome in *England*, the King thought it not conuenient to

send his men of warre out of the Countrey. The King of *Portingale* therefore seeing no more succours come, began to treat with the *Spaniard* of peace, though altogether against the mindes of the English: whose Generall highly offended with the matter, returned thereupon into *England*, and tooke with him his sennel also, to whome the king of *Portingales* daughter named *Beatrice* a Lady of 10 years old had beene lately betrothed. The next yeere following, the King of Spaines wife (which was the King of *Arragons* daughter) deceased, and the King of *Spaine* married this *Beatrice*, whom the Earle of *Cambridge* had in a manner cast off and forsaken. This marriage was ratified by the Pope. Not long after, also dyed *Ferdinando* King of *Portingale*, in whose place, not the King of *Spaine* which had married his daughter, but a bastard brother of his succeeded, being admitted to the crowne rather by favour of the clergy and authoritie of the citties, then by election or approbation of the nobility. Vpon this occasion much trouble and great warres ensued afterward.

The death of  
*Ferdinando*  
king of *Portingale*.

The *Gaunt-  
toyes* kept  
from victuall,  
and brought  
to great ex-  
tremity by  
the Earle of  
*Flanders*.

When the *Gaunttoys* through the Earle of *Flanders* procurement were kept strictly from victuall out of all places adioyning, certaine of their towne to the number of twelue thousand, passing through *Barband* came to *Liege* and were there relieved with corne and other necessities. In their returne homeward, they earnestly besought the Dutches of *Brabant* (for the Duke was then at *Lutsemburgh*) to be a meanes to the Earle of *Flanders*, that at leastwise he wold be so farre pleased as to suffer the matters betweene them, to be debated by indifferent persons at some time & place appointed. The Earle condescended, and a meeting was had at *Tornay*. Thither resorted the commissioners of diuerse neighbour states, to compound the strife if it might be possible. For the *Gaunttoys* came *Philp* of *Artenule*. But after much expectation, when it seemed the Earle would neither come himselfe, nor send any other to treat in his behalfe, the parties assembled wrote letters, admonishing and

and earnestly entreating him, that he would not neglect this good opportunity, now whilst his aduersaries were so tractable to deale with, and so desirous of agreement. Whereunto the Earle made answere, that he had not leysure to be present there himselfe, but to gratify those honourable persons that had trauelled so farre in the matter, he would send some in few daies after, which should fully acquaint them with his resolution: the effect whereof, vpon relation of his messengers, was much to this purpose. That he would not come to composition with the *Gannts* vpon any other termes, then that all of them generally betweene fifteene and threescore yeeres of age, presenting themselves without the citie vpon the open plaine, without any manner of weapon, bare headed and bare footed, with halters about their necks, should first craue pardon of him for their offences, & afterward submit themselves to his mercie, to determine of them and their liues at his pleasure. Other answere then this ( notwithstanding all the intercession of his friends ) none could be obtayned, and so the assembly brake vp. *Phillip* returning to *Gant*, the next day discoursed the successe of his treaty to the people. Then might ye haue scene the lamentable state of a city reduced to extreame miserie & desperation. In which generall calamitie *Phillip* put them in choise of three courses to be taken, eyther to accept the conditions profered, or A hard choise. to shut themselves vp in their churches, and there praying to God for pardon of their sinnes, abide patiently the end of their liues; or else some five thousand of them to issue out of the towne and fight with their enemy. After deliberation, this last tooke place: for indeede there was no other remedy, but either to try their fortunes forthwith by the sword, or else to perish miserably for hunger. The Earle had his men of warre about him the same time at *Bruges* to the number of forty thousand. For knowing that his enemies were now brought to such distresse, he was resolved by all meanes to make an honourable conclusion of



See the effects of desperate resolution.

1382.

The Earle overthrowne, and *Bruges* taken by the *Gauntoys*.

of this warre: and therefore when he heard tydings of the *Gauntoys* approach, he disposed his forces to receiue them. The *Gauntoyes* though they were fewe in number, yet being hartened by perswasions, and chiefly for that they left a poore, forlorne, afflicted, and most miserable citty behinde them, wherein their wiues, their children, and whatsoeuer else was deere to them remayned, the safety or destruction of all which depended wholly vppon the successe of that one dayes seruice, came to the field with a bold courage & desperate resolution. The men of *Bruges* who before were exceedingly forward and desirous to fight (in so much that the Earle was in a manner constrayned by their importunity to giue battell that day against his owne minde and purpose) as soone as the armies ioyned, being strooken with a suddaine feare, vppon what occasion I knowe not, except because the sunne was in their faces, brake their aray and ranne headlong out of the battell. The Earle himselfe also when he could by no meanes restrayne them, was forced to fly and his battell of horsemen with him. The Earle out-ryding the rest of his company, recouered the towne of *Bruges*, and would haue closed the gates against the entrance of his enemies: but it was in vaine, for they pursued so fast after him as he fled, that they entred the citty a little before night. And euen then the Earle not altogether past hope, gathered the townesmen together, & made head against the enemy: But he was brought to such extremity, that somewhat before midnight the *Gauntoyes* hauing ouerrunne all the Citty, and he being viterly destitute and forsaken of his people, was faine to conuey himselfe by stealth sometime into one lane and sometime into another, and at length entring into the cottage of a poore woman, who had scarce so much in all her house as to hide him, with much adoe saued his life. Behold here the misery and straunge mutability of mans estate.

After this victory, the men of *Bruges* were cruelly entreated by the enemy, and amongst other things that pleased

the conquerour, some five hundred of the wealthiest of their cittie were carryed prisoners to *Gawnt*. The Earle still doubtfull of his life, after he had lurked there a while in great secrecy, fled to *Lisle* one while on foote, and other whiles on a mares back without any saddle, in most wearysome way and most tedious weather. This successe of the *Gawntoys* greatly reioyced the people of *Paris*, of *Roan*, of *Liege*, of *Brabant* and all the citties thereabout; not only in regard of the example, but because they also wished ill to the earle of *Flaunders*, whom they generally noted of pride: *Phillip* was highly honoured in all places where he became, and in all things vsed such excesse as euer in a Prince might haue beene counted superfluity. All the townes generally submitted themselves to the victorious people of *Gawnt*. Only the men of *Arde* being summoned to yeild, when they had valiantly refused euen in despite of their enemies, were besieged by *Phillip* with a strong power leuyed from all parts of *Flaunders*. The *Gawntoys* in the meane time made many rodes into the country, rifling and destroying diuerse gentle mens houses. And amongst the rest, a certaine castle of the Earles where they found the holy Funt wherein the Earle was christened, with his cradle and such other things, which were all made a prey to the barbarous fury and outrage of the soldier. The Earle being thus vtterly ouerthrowne & brought vnder foote, considered how there was no other hope of recouery now remayning but one, which was to moue the French king to commiseration of his estate. To this therefore he addressed himselfe: and for better obtaynement of his purpose, employed the friendly endeauour of his sonne in law, the vnckle of him at whose hands he required succour. The young king easily induced by his persuasions, vnderooke this warre with great alacrity. When *Phillip* of *Artenill* vnderstood that by the Duke of *Burgoyne* intercession, the Earles suite was preferred in *France*, he addressed letters forthwith in the name of the people to the

Strange alteration in the Earles fortune.

The Duke of Burgundy.

The French King taketh vpon him the Earles

Q

French

quarell a-  
gainst the  
*Gauntloys*.

French king, beseeching him that he would be a meanes to make reconciliation betweene the Earle & his country. Hewrote not this so much for any good faith which he intended, as to learne hereby what opinion was holden of him in *Fraunce*. But assoone as hee saw himselfe disappointed there (for the King had disdaine at his letters) he turned to the King of *England*, of whome he not onely requested ayd for the *Gauntloys*, but also (altogether out of season) demaunded the two hundreth thousand crownes that his father *Iaques* had lent King *Edward* at the siege of *Tourney*: by meanes whereof it came to passe that he obtayned neither the one nor the other. For had he made no mention at all of the money, but onely entreated of the league, it is like enough he might haue obtayned his desire.

The Earle of *Flanders* hauing accesse now opened vnto him by reason the kings mind was so addicted to this war, tooke his iourney into *Fraunce*. And after he had receiued his inauguration at the kings hands, for the countie of *Artoys* (which was lately befallne him) he began to conceiue better hope of his affaires: especially when he sawe so puissant a Prince, with such forwardnes of affection, bring a mighty army of nolesse then threefore thousand men, to wage batell against his enemy in the maintenance of his quarell. Whereof so soone as *Phillip* had receiued aduertisement, he omitted no part of what pertained to his charge, but commaunded presently that all the bridges vpon the riuier *Lise* which were nere hand, should be broken downe. Moreouer he caused two passages vpon the riuier to be strongly fortified and defended with good garrifones: the one of them (at *Comins*) being kept by *Peter de Boys* with nine thousand men. Whereof the *French* men being not ignorant, sundry opinions rose amongst the as they consulted of their affaires: some thinking it were best to goe about by *Saint Omers* where the riuier is shallowest; others giuing counsell to make a bridge ouer *Skeld*,



*Skeld* not farre from *Tourney*, to the intent the army might passe easily from thence into *Arde*. At length it likte them best to venture vppon the enemy before mentioned which lay at *Comins*. When they came thither, they found the bridge broken downe and no passage to get ouer, where-uppon they fell againe to consultation. In the meane while certaine aduenturous gallants which were desirous to make some prooue of their valour (hauing formerly agreed amongst themselves, that if no passage could be found, they would secretly vse some meanes by their owne industry without knowledge of their commanders, to conuey themselves ouer) with the helpe of three or foure small botes slyding along by a cord fastened to both sides of the riuer, passed ouer in that sorte by a fewe at once, till they had gotten all their company to the further side in safety: and this they did with so little trouble or daunger, that the enemy who lay encamped not farre of, neuer perceiued it before such time as he saw them marching towards him with Ensignes displayd. *Peter de Boyis* immagining that so small a number durst neuer venture vppon him, because the euening approached, would not fight with them as then, but rather thought to set vppon them in the night when the wearinesse of their trauell had ouertaken them with sleepe. But the French men whom the boldnes of their attempt had made circumspect in their proceedings, considering how great and dangerous an enterprise they had vndertaken without lycence either of King or Captaine, were exceedingly watchfull, and stood alwaies vpon their guard for feare of disaduantage. About the breake of day their enemies came forth to assaile them, whom they encountered with such resolution (albeit their number were but a handfull in comparison) that they slew well nere six thousand, and chased the rest into a towne thereby which they tooke for refuge. After this battell the French king presently building vp a bridge, brought ouer the rest of his forces, and marched directly towards *Ipre*. The townesme

They were in  
all not aboue  
foure or fife  
hundreth.  
*Fros. Chro.*  
*lib. 2. Cap. 414.*

*Ipse receiuet  
the French  
king.*

following the fortune of the conquerours army, slew their gouernour because he refused to yeild, and committed themselues to the French King. All their neighbours immitating their example, did both pay great summes of money, and also brought their captaines prisoners which perswaded them to stand out in rebellion. But the Earle of *Flaunders* was called to counsell in none of these proceedings. The men of *Bruges* could haue bene contented to yeild as well as the rest, but their Captaines so encouraged them with hope of ayd out of *England*, that they held it out notwithstanding.

When *Phillip* of *Artenill* vnderstood that the power of the most puissant King was encamped not farre from him, he also brought forth his army into the field, which consisted of some fifty thousand men. There he exhorted them in a pithy oration, that now going to battell they set before their eies that memorable ouerthrowe which with so small a company they had giuen to the Earle of *Flaunders*; and withall to consider how after this battell, if they obtayned victory, they should thenceforth become Lords of all, and be able to make opposition against them. Which thing in their behalfe all good and well gouerned commonwealthes desired, to whome no tydings could be more acceptable, then to heare that the *Gauntoys* fighting valiantly and constantly in defence of their liberty, had reaped the honourable reward of their verrue and courage, by destroying such persons as through ambition and couetousnesse could not suffer any common wealth to remain in quiet. When he had spoken much more to this effect, he commanded that in the conflict they should put all to the sword, and spare no man, the King only excepted. The *Flemings* not forgetting what *Phillip* had told them, fought very manfully: & this also not a little sharpened their courage, that they had stirred vp such a puissant enemy against them, whome if they might ouercome, it would redound to their perpetual fame amongst all posterity. Notwithstanding  
at

at length being enclosed betweene two wings of their enemies & forced into a straight, they were overthrowne. The battell lasted not much aboute an hower, and yet in that little space xxv. Thousand of their number were wanting. *Philsp* fighting valiantly amongst the thickest of his enemies was slaine in the field, and his body being sought for and found amongst the dead, was by the Kings commaundement hanged vppon a tree. Vndoubtedly, that dayes battell was fought in a fortunate houre for all noblemen and gentlemen, For had it falne out otherwise then it did, surely (as the world then went) it would haue giuen a great blow to their authorsty, and haue shaken euen the seates of Kings and Princes. The Parisians, who lately before had begun a comotion, long'd exceedingly to heare some good newes of the successe of this battell. In *Champaigne* and a great part of *Fraunce* besides, all the wealthiest cities, and the peasants of the country began to make insurrection. Therefore vppon the successe of this action, depended the safety or ruine of many Princes estates. The King was then between thirteene and fourteene yeares of age. The men of *Bruges* perceiuing that by this ouerthrow of the *Gaunt*, all hope of succour was bereft them, and all meanes of recovery taken away, submitted themselues to the kings mercy. And the Earle of *Flaunders* because he bare no displeasure to this towne, became intercessour for them to the King, that they might be receiued into fauour paying six score thousand franks. Those that besieged *Arde*, as soone as they heard tydings how their fellowes were discomfited, brake vp their campe and returned to *Gaunt*. The *Gaunt* altogether broken and discouraged with this so great misfortune, began to consider with themselues how they might best mooue the Kings mind to mercy and compassion. But *Peter de Boys* being brought thither in a horselitter (for he was yet weake of his wounds) with his great words and glorious vaunts, quite put that imagination out of their heads. After the french King vppon deliberation

The French kings victorie against the *Gaunt*.

*Phillip de Artois* slaine.

*Bruges* yeeldeth to the french King.



deliberation with his counsell, thought it not conuenient as then to besiege *Gaunt*, he distributed his men into diuers garrisons, and returned to *Tourney*.

The *Gauntoys* as is shewed before, had sent to the King of *England* about the obtaynment of a league; the articles whereof (deuised by his counsell) the King sent to them in writing by a gentleman of his household, that if the *Flemings* allowed them, they should confirme them with their seales. But the ambassadour arriuing at *Calice*, when he heard how the *Gauntoys* were ouerthrowne, and that the french men had subdued most part of the country, without performance of his commission he returned into *England*. Neither were the English nobility greatly sory that the *Gauntoys* went by the worse: whome if it had fortunèd to go away with victory, the commons generally in all countyes adioyning, would from thence haue deriued a parterne of pride and rebellion, and considering how but lately before there had been most perillous tumults in *England*, euery small matter might haue ministred new occasion of insurrection. Thus they thought, and this was their opinion. Whilst the french king lay at *Tourney*, diuers well disposed persons laboured very earnestly to make a reconciliati<sup>o</sup>n between the Earle and his rebellious subiects. The *Gauntoys* refused not to be at the french Kings disposition, but rather then receiue the Earle *Lewis* againe, it seemed they would endure all extremities whatsoeuer. When nothing could be brought to effect, the french King returned homeward: & as he approached nere *Paris*, there came forth to meete him some xx. 1000 of the townsmen, all armed and well appointed. This seemed very straunge both to the King and all that were about him: and because in these dayes it was no trusting to such a multitude in armes, ther were some sent to inquire their meaning. Their answer was thus: that they came forth in such sort prouided, to the intent the King might see with what power the *Parisians* could furnish him vppon short warning whensoever

ever he had need of their seruice. This they framed for an excuse at the present time, but doubtlesse their intention was farre otherwise before, and had not the King come home with victory, surely straunge things had happened. Being commaunded to returne into the towne and put off their armour, they obeyed. The King brought with him a great army of Britons and Burgonions, the countenance whereof kept the Parisians in feare. Then by aduise of his vncles he began leysurely to deale with them according to their deserts. He caused all their corslets to be brought together vppon a heape, and tooke them from them : put to death many principall men of your Citty, imposed diuers taxes and tributes vpon them, and in conclusion wipte them off some foure hundreth thousand franks for fines and ransomes.

There was mortall contention the same time between the two Popes *Clement*, and *Vrbane*. *Clement* then remained at *Auinion*, and *Vrbane*, partly for other causes, but principally the more commodiously to annoy his aduersary the French King, repaired to *Genoa*. He came not out of *Italy* vnfurnisht of meanes wherewith to strengthen his

supremacy. And these were his practises. He determined to send his bulles into *England*, directed to the Archbishops and Bishops of the Realme, wherein he graunted free remission of all finnes to such as impugned the *Clementines* : for so did Pope *Clement* with him in *France*. And being well assured that he could no way worke the Frenchmen greater displeasure then by this meanes to set the Englishmen against them, he practised another deuise for the getting of mony, without which, he knew the English nobility would be nothing forward to take armes for all his absolutions. Therefore he thought it best besides for his former pardons, to graunt the King licence to leuie a tenth vpon all churchmens goods, the principall prelates excepted, out of which collection the souldiers employed in that seruice, should be allowed their entertain-

Schisme in  
the Church.

The practises  
of Pope *Vr-  
bane* against  
*Clement* his  
aduersarie.

ment.

ment. And to compasse this matter the better, he suborned the chiefe of the Clergy (whome he had exempted from this payment) to vrge forward the inferiour sort to make contribution. By this meanes, neither the kings treasure is exhausted, nor the common people burthened more the they gaue of their own voluntary affection: which surely euery man did for his part most liberally, as the world went in those dayes : especially in consideration of the reward proposed (which was not meane nor ordinarie) the opportunity of obtaining whereof, no man thought was in any wise to be neglected. Thus partly by the great number of bulles which Pope *Vrbane* sent into *England*, and partly by sermons preached in euery place to that purpose, mens mindes were so rauished, that they thought themselues already in paradise, which had the fortune to dye in such a blessed season : so that in short space there was gathered together, of the tenths of the Clergy and beneuolence of the people, about the summe of fīue and twenty hundred thousand franks. And that the matter might import more credit, it was the Popes pleasure some churchmen which had experience in such affaires, associated with some other skilfull captaine, should haue chiefe commaund ouer the army thus assenbled. In like manner he sent his bulles into *Portingale*, and vsed the like practise there to trouble the King of *Spaine* which tooke part against him. So the Duke of *Lancaster* was appointed to inuade *Spaine*, and a Bishop of the family of the *Spencers* was sent to make wars in *Fraunce*. But in regard the Duke was nothing fauoured by the commons, and suspected to haue taken vpon him this voyage, rather for couetousnesse then any conscience, most part of the people desired to serue vnder the Bishop. To whome the King at his setting forth, gaue commaundement that he should tarry for his other associate and fellow Captaine of the warre, at *Calice*. But the Bishop being one that could away with no lingring, and supposing there was no delay to be vsed in the matter, led forth his army presently

He sent no  
lesse then 30.  
as appeareth:  
*Froiss. Chro:*  
*lib. 2. cap.*  
428.

Henry Spen-  
cer Bishop of  
*Norwich*.



sently into *Flaunders*. The Earle lying then at *Lile*, sent to him to know the cause of his suddaine inuasion without defiance. Whereto he answered, that he persecuted all the Clementines in the behalfe of Pope *Urbane*. The messengers replied, that *Flaunders* held altogether of *Urbanes* side; & if there were none other occasion but that, he had vniustly vndertaken this warre against those that had no way deserued it. Wherefore they desired him to graunt them safe conduct, that they might passe ouer into *England* to speake with the King. Then the Bishop in a froward fashion told them, that for his part he would make them no safe conduct neither to goe nor tarry; if they would needs passe, they might do it at their owne perill. When no other aunswere then this could be obtained from a person so arrogant and vnciuill, the Flemings to the number of Nine thousand made opposition against the English, not farre from the towne of *Dunkyrke*; where encountring them in battell, (after they had slayne a Herauld sent with a message from the Englishmen) they were ouerthrowne and put to flight with the losse of some nine thousand of their people. Then the Englishmen hauing taken certaine little townes thereabout, marched forward to besiege *Ipre*. And to the intent to make their power the stronger, they sent word to the *Gauntoys* that they also should draw out their forces into the field. For there was no league established between them, and it grieved the English not a little that the french men wonne the victory in the former battell, so enuious were they of the french mens honour or good fortune. The *Gauntoys* therefore sent them 20000. men to the siege of *Ipre*. Whilst *Ipre* was thus streightly enuironed, the Earle of *Flaunders* by mediation of the Bishop of *Liege*, determined to fall to some friendly agreemēt with the English, whome (as in reason it might be supposed) he should find tractable in that behalfe, considering how the warre was rayfed onely against the Clementines, and himselfe with all his people were *Urbanists*. But the

R

*Gauntoys*

1383.

The French  
King agayne  
vndertaketh  
the Earle of  
*Flanders*  
cause.

*Gauntoys* who were partakers of the English mens counfels, for hatred they bare to their Lord, interrupted this treaty. Then had the Earle no other hope but the helpe of the french King, who being againe solicited by the Duke of *Burgonie*, his vncle, and the Earle of *Flanders* sonne in law, vndertooke the matter, and rayfed an army of aboue an hundred thousand men. The Bishop as vnskilfull in matters of warre so wonderously proud, when he heard that the kings power was comming against him, streytway dislodged his campe, and breaking vp his siege withdrew himselfe towards the sea coast, with part of his army (the rest being disperfed in garrisons) to the intent that when his enemy approched, he might the better prouide for his safety by an easy retreyte to *Calice*. In the Kings army was the Duke of *Britaine*, which seemed a straunge sight to the Englishmen, through whose friendship and assistance he had often been succoured & restored to his Dukedome. But he might lawfully do it at that time without empeachment of his honour. First, because he was lately before reconciled to the french King: and againe in regard he ought this reciprocall dutie to the Earle of *Flanders*, whose bounty and good affection he had abundantly tasted in the time of his necessity, when he liued as an exile, expulsed out of his owne country. Such is the instability of mans estate, that the affliction which oppresseth one to day, seizeth vpon another to morrow. And yet the Duke shewed himselfe no whit vnmindfull of the benefits he had receiued from the English, who vpon the approche of the french army, had retyred themselves into a certaine towne called *Borborough*, and were besieged in the same. For considering the imminent perill that hung ouer their heads, which they could no way auoyd but by yeelding (the successe whereof was likewise vncertaine) he ceased not to exhort them (as they parlyed with him from the walles) to prouide in time for their owne safegard by offering some reasonable composition. The Englishmen not only vnthankfully

fully accepted his motion, but further entreated him to be a meanes to the King for the effecting of their purpose, which he also vndertooke and performed. So the King vppon some deliberation, receiuing the towne into his hands, suffered all the Englishmen to depart without harme or violence. When the expedition was ended, and the army brake vp, the King gaue honourable thanks to such foraine Capitaines as had serued him in this iourney, especially to Duke *Frederick* of *Banier*, who had put himselfe forth into this action, only vpon desire to see the countries and to obserue the order and discipline of the french warres.

The Duke of *Britaine* desirous in regard of his good affection, aswell to the french King as the English, to bring them to agreement, procured so much by his great trauell and diligence, that an appointment was made for the meeting of certaine ambassadours from *Fraunce*, *England*, and *Spaine*. For the french King would not deale with the English, but so as the Spaniard might be included in the treaty. And because in so doubtfull a case, neither the french men wold come to *Calice*, nor the Englishmen to *Boloine*, a place indifferent betweene both was assigned for their meeting. There the french kings vncles demaunded againe all *Aquitaine*, together with *Calice*, and all the fortresses which the Englishmen then held on that side the sea, as farre as the riuer of *Gerond*, aswell in *Normandy*, as in the countries of *Britaine*, *Poytow*, and *Rochell*. Contrariwise the Englishmen would part from none of all those things, and besides, the principall points which they had in cōuission to treat of, they would also that the *Gauntoys* should be receiued into this society : For so it was formerly agreed betweene the *Gauntoys* and them at *Calice*. But against this demaund the Earle of *Flaunders* opposed himselfe with great vehemency, affirming that they were in no wise to be admitted into league with so great Princes. In conclusion, when nothing else could be agreed vppon, a truce was taken for



tenne moneths both by sea and land, between the French, English, Spanish, Scottish, and Gauntoys, notwithstanding all that the Earle of *Flanders* could alledge or perswade to the contrary. This also was added, that somewhat before the truce expired, the ambassadours should meete againe at a place appointed to conferre of these affaires more at large.

1383.

The death of  
Lewis Earle  
of *Flanders*.

Within a while after deceased the Earle of *Flanders*, whose fortune for a time had wonderfully entangled with warres amongst his owne subiects; so that in his example alone we may behold, how great a happinesse it is for a Prince so to gouerne his people as he may be both beloved and feared: and contrarily, how daungerous it is to happen vppon a puissant common wealth which vnder pretence of maintayning their liberty, confoundeth all things together, to the intent to shift their necks wholly out of the yoke of obedience.

When the ambassadours departed from the treaty aboue mentioned, it was agreed amongst other matters, that the French men should giue notice of the truce to the King of *Scotland*. But this was left vnperformed, by what errour or negligence I know not. It should seeme after the Earle of *Flanders* death, the duke of *Burgoynes* braine was so busied that he quite forgot it: for all that inheritance was descended to him. Certaine English gentlemen taking aduantage of this occasion made a rode into *Scotland*, wasting the country as they went with fire and sword. The Scottes who knew nothing what had passed, meruailled much at the matter, seeing no warre was proclaymed, and so much the more because they had heard a certaine darke rumor of a truce. But howsoeuer the case stood, they prepared to defend themselves. When report hereof was brought to the french King, the Peeres began to accuse one another of negligence in forgetting a matter of so great moment. And because there was now no other remedy, they sent certaine into *Scotland*,  
which

which by declaring the true circumstances of the matter should giue them satisfaction. The king himselfe was well inclined to peace, but the Lords of his country made much adoe and were very hot vppon reuenge, and in like maner rode forth into the borders of *England* to shew that they neither wanted courage nor ability to defend themselves and their goods from their enemies. At length being pacified and the King perswaded, the French ambassadors sent an herauld into *England*, and so quieted the strife. And when the truce was receiued and ratified on both parts, it was proclaymed by sound of trumpet, that no man should presume to transgresse the articles therein contayned. But to perswade the king of *England* to this peace (for he was highly offended at the late inuasion of the Scottish) great meanes were made by the Duke of *Lancaster*, who had formerly determined to make his voyage this yeere into *Spaine*, with the assistance of the King of *Portingale*: which warre he was the more desirous to accomplish, in regard he had issue by his wife, to whome he affirmed the kingdome of *Spaine* was both by the lawe of nations and nature it selfe, of right appertayning.

It is shewed before with how great preparation & puissance the Duke of *Anion* passed into *Italy*. When he came thither he found no opposition, but onely in the *Neapolitanes*, who would in no wise be turned from his aduersarie: but *Pronence*, *Calabria*, and *Apulia* receiued him. The Earle of *Sauoy* (as I told you) accompanied him in his iourney, and about this time ended his life. Now when he had retayned his souldiers for the space of three yeeres together, being almost drayned dry with so great and continuall charges, he requested his brothers that they would not faile him in these his affaires of so great honour and importance. They out of their loue and honourable affection, holding it not fit to abandon him in so iust a quarrell, sent an army to ayd him: which when it came to *Anion*, in *Italy*.

The Duke of  
*Anion* dyeth  
in *Italy*.

He not farre from *Naples*, and so returned home againe.

After the death of the Earle of *Flaunders*, the inheritance of that country descended to *Phillip* Duke of *Burgundy* which had married his daughter. Now the Dutchesse of *Brabant* (whose husband *Wenceslaus* of *Bohemia* dyed lately before at *Lutsemburgh*) desired earnestly, that *Burgundy*, *Henault* and *Flaunders*, might be vnitied in perpetual league and amitie. The Duke of *Burgoyne* had a sonne named *Iohn*. This *Iohn* married *Margaret* the daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria* and *Henault* at *Cambray*. And *William* the sonne of *Albert* tooke to wife *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Burgoyne*. The french king was present at these nuptialles. And the Duke of *Burgoyne* gaue in dowry with his daughter an hundred thousand franks. These allyances troubled the Duke of *Lancaster*, who had a purpose to haue matcht a daughter of his to the sonne of Duke *Albert*. And therefore at such time as these matters were in treaty, he endeaoured by his letters to *Albert*, to haue hindred their proceedings, but it preuailed not.

Her name was *Phillip* whom he had by *Blaunch* his first wife.

Concerning the Earles of *Henault*, ye must conceiue that *William* the Lord of this seigniory had foure daughters, *Margaret*, *Phillip*, *Ione*, and *Isabell*, and one sonne named *William*. *Margaret* was married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperour: *Edward* king of *England*, married *Phillip*: *William* was slaine in battell against the *Prisoners* & left no issue. Therefore by his death the right of succession deuolued to *Margaret* the eldest sister: and she enioyed the heritage till such time as *Albert* her sonne whom she had by *Lewis* the Emperour, being growne to mans estate, entred vpon the inheritance of his ancestors. And afterward *William* the sonne of *Albert* married the Duke of *Burgoyne* daughter, as is a little before declared.

The Duke of *Aniow* left behinde him two sonnes, *Lewis*, and *Charles*: in whose right their mother (by the counsell of



of Pope *Clement* and the French king) made warre vpon the people of *Prouence*, not without the French Kings assistance, who supplied her wants both with men and money. The men of *Manceilles* were well affected towards her, but all the rest opposed themselves against her, and as it seemed, would not accept her for their soueraigne, before *Calabria*, *Naples* and *Apulia* had done the same: of which countries when she could shewe her selfe to haue quiet possession, they also offered to put themselves vnder her obedience.

The truce by this time being expired, the French King had a meruailous desire to bee doing with the King of *England*. Hereupon leuying an army, he sent the Duke of *Burbon* into *Aquitaine*, that if it were possible he might expell the English men wholly out of *Fraunce*. He sent another army also into *Scotland* vnder the conduct of his Admirall, to the intent the Scottish power and his being ioyned together, might put the king of *England* to the greater vexation. But when the Admirall arriued in *Scotland*, he found not such friendly entertaynement as he looked for.

*Charles* the first, vpon his death-bed had requested his brothersto chuse a wife for his son of some noble family, & especially out of *Germany*, that the allyance might be the stronger. They did according to his desire. For he married *Isabell* the daughter of *Stephen* Duke of *Banier*, a Lady of most excellent beauty. But the first meanes of this match was deriued from this occasion, that *Fredericke* of *Banier* her vnckle had followed the French king in his late warres against the English, as hath beene already declared.

Shortly after the death of the Duke of *Aniow*, who had attempted great matters in *Italie*, dyed also his aduersary *Charles*, surnamed the Peaceable. It was supposed, that he was made away by the Queene of *Hungarie*, who hauing two daughters by her husband *Lewis* deceased, feared least

The Admirall of *France* sent with a power into *Scotland*.

*Charles* the French king, marryeth *Isabell* daughter of *Stephen* Duke of *Banier*.

left this *Charles* which was his brothers sonne, should dispossesse them of their inheritance, specially for that he openly tearmed himselfe King of *Hungarie*: and therefore wrought meanes to dispatch him out of the worlde: but whether this be a true report or a coniecture, I cannot affirme. Then sent she ambassadors to the French King, requiring that her daughter might be matchd to his brother *Lewis* of *Valois*. This being not mislikte in *Fraunce*, commissioners were sent into *Hungarie* to go through with the matter in the behalfe of Duke *Lewis*, and others afterward sent from thence into *Fraunce* to fetch the bridegroome. In the meane while *Henry* of *Bohemia*, called the Marques of *Blankford*, the naturall brother of *Charles* King of *Bohemia*, disdayning that a king should be sought so farre off, by the procurement of certaine Lords of *Hungary*, and not without consent of his brother, besieged the Queene and her daughter, as they sojourned for their recreation in a certaine castle seated in a solitary place farre from resort of people. By meanes whereof she was at length constrained to giue him her daughter to wife. The French kings brother who was proceeded on his iourney, as farre as *Champaigne* with all his household and retinue, when he heard newes of this alteration in *Hungary*, was not a litle discontented with the matter & returned again to his brother: who seemed not greatly sorie, for as much as *Hungary* by reason of the farre distance of the country from *Fraunce* could hardly afforde him any helpe at neede.

The French  
and Scottish  
men together  
inuaide the  
borders of  
*England*.

The Scottish king vnderstanding the Admiralles desire to be employed, leuyed an army of thirty thousand men. He himselfe would not be present in the iourney, but he sent his nine sonnes: who together with the French men set forth towards their enemies country, and wasted the borders farre and neere. But assoone as they vnderstood that the King of *England* approched with an armie of seauenty thousand men, they made no longer abode, but retyred  
and

and the English pursued after. The Admirall perswaded to giue battell, but the Scottish men, in regard their enemies were more in number then they, and because they knew likewise that the English were men of great practise and experience in armes, by all meanes refused the encounter. And it appeared, the English were neuer almost more vehemently bent to doe the Scottish a displeasure, then at that time, because they had then waged forraine soldiers against them, and that out of *Fraunce*: wherwith the English men were exceedingly prouoked. The Scottish men the better to satisfie the Admirall ( who still vrged them to giue battell ) brought him to a hill there by of exceeding great height, from whence he might perfectly take a view of all his enemies forces. Which as soone as he had seene, he was content to followe their counsell that were of a contrary opinion to his owne. Notwithstanding, least they should seeme to haue performed nothing with both their powers ioyned together, they inuaded the marches of *Wales*, where they did somewhat more harme then they could in *England*. The Duke of *Lancaster* and many others gaue counsell to followe after them, but a certaine person of great credyt and authority, quite diuerted the kings minde from that purpose, suggesting into his conceit, how the Duke sought to thrust him forth into this dangerous action, to the intent he might perish in battell, and so himselfe get possession of the crowne. How much mischicfe this bringing the King in suspicion of his vnckles bred afterward in *England*, shall be declared in place conuenient.

The Earle of  
*Oxford.*

The *Gaunt* tyred with seauen yeeres warres, were desirous of peace, but it was priuately amongst themselves. For *Peter de Boys* who knew it was most for his profit and reputation, to haue the people alwaies in trouble & contention, held them vnder in such sort, that scarce any man durst openly make mention of peace. Neuerthelesse, through the diligent endeauour of two well disposed citizens,



1358.

The *Gaun-*  
*toies* receiued  
to fauour, and  
their peace  
made with  
their Lord  
the Duke of  
*Burgoigne.*

Sir Iohn  
*Baurchier.*

The Earle of  
*Foys.*

citizens (men studious of the publike welfare) and a certaine gentleman of vertuous qualitie, who was well beloued and befriended in *Fraunce*, their matter was brought to a peaceable conclusion: and the Duke of *Burgoigne* who was lately become Lord of the country, shewed himselfe very gentle and tractable, which he did so much the rather, because in the beginning of the next spring he was purposed to make warres in *England*. My author makes a large rehearsal of the Articles of this peace, which here it shall not be needfull to insert. When *Peter de Boys* vnderstood these proceedings, he likte them so well, that he left the Citie, and went ouer into *England* with an English gentleman whom the *Gauntoys* long before had procured vpon earnest entreaty to be gouernour of their towne. For howsoeuer after the peace was confirmed, it seemed he might haue stayed there in safetie, yet not daring to trust the multitude, he thought it his best course to conuey himselfe out of their danger. The author of this worke after rehearsal of these matters, discourseth how himselfe for his better knowledge and instruction of such occurrents as happened in *Spaine, Portingale, Gascoigne*, and the countries thereabout (when he was of those yeares that he was able to endure the trauell of the iourney, and of that capacity and vnderstanding that he could describe and register in writing such things as he learned by his owne or others obseruation) came at length to the house of a *Gascone* Lord called the Earle of *Foys*, a man of much honour and respect in those times: by whome being familiarly entertayned for certaine moneths together, he receiued diuerse informations both from the Earle himselfe, and from other persons of great credyt and account which had bene present themselves at the doing of those things whereof they made relation. Amongst the rest he recounteth a certaine sorrowfull aduenture, and such a one as would make euen nature it selfe astonished; the discourse is this.

The Earle of *Foys* an honourable and valiant gentleman, held in custodie a certaine noble man whom he had taken prisoner, by the lawe of armes, who for his ranſome couenanted to pay fifty thousand franks, for which summe the king of *Nauarre* (whose sister the Earle had married) profered to become surety. But the Earle suspecting the Kings credite (wherewith perhaps he had beene too well acquainted) would not but vpon better assurance, deliuer his prisoner. His wife displeased to see her brother no better respected, was very importunate with her husband, and would not be in quiet till she had perswaded him: oftentimes making mention how there was a matter of as great value as that, to be assigned to her brother in consideration of her dowry, and therefore that he neede not feare to be deceiued. The prisoner by this meanes being set at liberty, as soone as he came home into his countrey, to the intent to discharge his credite, prouided the summe of mony and sent it at his day accordingly, not to the Earle himselfe, but to the King of *Nauarre* his surety: which when the Earle vnderstoode, hee marvelled much the mony was not brought him, and by his wife (who willingly vnder-tooke the journey) signified his minde to the King of *Nauarre*, desiring him to remember his promise, who vpon receit of the message answered his sister in this sort: Sister, this mony belongs all to you as your husbands debt in lieu of your dowry, and since it is now come to my handes, I will in no wise suffer it to passe from me againe. Then beganne she to intreate and earnestly to beseech him that hee would alter his purpose in that behalfe, shewing how great occasion it would minister of perpetuall hatred and contention betweene them, & how she durst neuer returne home to her husband, vnlesse she brought the mony with her: for hee was by nature wrathfull, and would neuer be pleased with her againe, if he sawe himselfe deceitfully dealt with, considering how she was the onely meanes which mooued him to accept that assurance, and to deliuer his prisoner,

The strange  
story of Gas-  
cone Earle of  
*Foys*, and his  
sonne.

*Gascone.*

neither of which he would haue done but vpon hir intreatie, and therefore the whole blame would be imputed to her by her husband. When she had oftentimes thus expostulated in vaine, and sawe his obstinate minde would be nothing changed, not daring to goe backe into her owne country, she abode still in *Namarre* with her brother. During the time she sojourned there, her sonne which bare his fathers name, a youth of some fifteene yeares of age, came thither to visite her: and after certaine moneths tarriance when he prepared to depart, he would faine haue perswaded her to returne with him to his father, but she would by no meanes be intreated. So he tooke his leaue, and went from thence to *Pampelone* to doe the like to his vncke: who not onely vsed him with all honourable and kinde respect, but also at his departure gaue him many rich giftes, and amongst the rest, a purse with a little box in it full of a certaine confection in fine powlder, the force whereof was such, that whosoever had tasted of it in neuer so smal quantity, should incontinently haue died. In presenting this amiable gift to his yong kinsman, he vttered these speeches. You see (sweet nephew) how great displeasure your father hath conceiued against your mother, yet not so great but that there is possibility they may be againe reconciled. No man will imagine how much I am griued for the discontentment betweene them, and no lesse in duty ought you to be also. But for remedy of this inconuenience, when you are returned to your father, you shall find the meanes to cast a little of this powlder vpon the meate which shal be set before him, but you must do it very closely: for it will come to passe, that whereas now he viterly abhorreth her, as soone as he hath eaten of that meate, he shall desire her aboute all things; insomuch as he shall scarcely at any time endure her out of his company, so great shall be his loue, so ardent his affection. Vndoubtedly you haue much reason to wish it were so; but in any wise beware you make no man of your counsell, for then you loose your labour. The  
yong



yong gentleman as yet vnaacquainted with the world, thinking his vncl (of whom he would neuer haue suspected ill) had intended good faith and spoken as he thought, receiued the gift thãktully, & promised to do according to his direction. When he came home, his father gently welcõmed him, inquiring of diuers circumstances concerning his iourney, and other nouelties, and amongst the rest, whether his vncl had giuen him any at his parting, or no. He answered yes, and shewed him all his gifts, the box only excepted. But it so fell out, that a bastard son of the Earles, who kept familiar company with his brother, I know not by what occasion, lighted vppon his garment and found the purse hanging at it, wherein he perceiued some speciall thing whatsoeuer it were, was contained. Wherevppon questioning with his brother what it should be that he carryed so continually about him in his bosome, he would giue him no answer, but changed colour and seemed angry that he had been so inquisitiue. Within few dayes after they fell at variance playing at tennice, and the young Lord buffeted his bastard brother with his fists : who hauing no other meanes to make his party good, ranne straight to the Earle with a lamentable complaint, shewing what iniury was done to him by his brother, who indeede deserued to be beaten himselfe, and well chastized with a whip. And for what cause (quoth the Earle) doest thou thinke him worthy to be whipt? because (quoth the bastard) euer since he returned from his mother, he hath carryed about him at his breast a thing with a ranke fauour, to what purpose I know not, but that he told me it would not be long before his mother and you were reconciled. With that the Earle began to haue some suspition, and commaunded the boy to keep all secret. Next meale as he sate at dinner, and his sonne (after his ordinary custome) seruing him with assay, he espyed the purse-strings hanging at his bosome: wherevppon he harkened him to him as if he would haue whispered in his eare, and when he came nigh, tooke hold

of his dublet and vnbuttoned it, and cutting of the purse, made a prooue of the confession vppon a dog, who asloone as he had recieued it, fell downe dead immediatly. Then the Earle enraged with anger, and trembling all ouer his body, rose vp against his sonne intending doubtlesse to haue slaine him, but that the Gentlemen which were about him, abhorring the cruelty of such a fact, and amazed at the strangenes of the accident, with-held him. When he saw he could be suffered to vse no other violence, with bitter execrations he cursed his sonne, that had gone about so vn-naturally, and with so horrible kind of death to haue murdered his owne father, who had oftentimes sustained great warres against mighty and puissant Princes, onely to enlarge his seigniorie and to leaue him the richer inheritance. All that were presēt did what they could to appease his wrath: but he commaunded his sonne forthwith to prison, and to be sure he should not escape, gaue in charge that he should be streyghtly watched, threatening his keeper with extreme punishment if he shewed him any fauour. Moreouer he put to death with most cruell torments about fifteen persons all gentlemen of good werth because that being conuersant and familiar with his sonne, they had not discovered this damnable practise. Afterwards in an assembly of all the states of his country, whome he had summoned to be present at a day appointed, when he had declared at large the most wicked and vnnaturall treason which his sonne had practised against him, amplifying the matter with diuers circumstances to make it appeare more haynous, he gaue sentence vppon him that he should be put to death. Intercession was made of all hands humbly entreating him that he would not shew so cruell an example: neither would they depart from thence before hee had faithfully assured them, that his sonnes life should be saued. He performed his promise, but detayned him still in prison. When report of this matter came to Pope *Gregory* the xi. he sent certaine Cardinals from *Avinion*, whome he had gi-  
uen

uen in charge to make a perfect attonement betweene the father and the sonne. But (God knowes) they came to late. For the young Earle during the space of tenne daies that he was kept in prison, had taken little or no sustenance, (though meate were set before him) so as it should seeme, through continuall musing vpon the strangenes of his misfortune, he had conceiued so great griefe, as he desired nothing but death. Whereof his father being informed by the keeper, he entred in vnto him with a troubled mind, holding a penknife in his hand wherewith he was paring his nailes, and by what facall aduienture I know not, cut a vaine of his sons throat, chiding him bitterly in the meane time for refusing his meate, and so departed out of the roome. Immediately after, the keeper comming in, found him dead vpon the floore. Which newes being brought to the Earle, did marvailously afflict him though he were much disquieted before. For this accident happened altogether beyond his intent and expectation.

The Earle of  
Foy's killeth  
his owne son  
vnwittingly.

Yee haue heard before of the death of *Ferdinando* King of *Portingale*, in whose place was chosen not *John* King of *Castile* the deceased kings sonne in law, but another of the clergy, *Ferdinando*s base brother, & that rather by fauor of the cities, the of the nobility. Whervpon the King of *Spain* sent ambassadors forthwith to the state of *Lisbone* (the principall & most flourishing of all that country) sharply accusing & reprouing them for so vniustly taking the inheritance of the crowne from him, who had married the only daughter of their King *Ferdinando*, and conferring the same vpon one who in right had no title at all to that dignity.

Pag. 110.

When this would not preuaile, and that they shewed themselves resolute to abide by their election, he rayfed an armie of thirty thousand men, and besieged their City. But after a yeares continuance and more, hauing performed no notable seruice, he was constrained to returne into *Spain* by reason of a pestilence which consumed wel-neer 20000. of his men: and not long after there came succours to him

*John* King of  
*Spain* layeth  
claime to the  
crowne of  
*Portingale*, &  
besieged *Lis-*  
*bone*.

out



out of *France*, wherewith both his power and his courage were anew reenforced. Neuerthelesse when it came to consultatiō, the Spaniards thought best to discharge the army, but the French men being demaunded their opinion, gaue counsell to fight with the enemy, alleadging probable reasons for the same. At such time as the King of *Spain* retyred with his army from *Lisbone*, certaine shippes of the Englishmen arriued in the hauen. They were not sent thither by the King of *England*, but of their own heads, after they had roued about from place to place in *Gascogne* and *Guyen*, they assembled at *Burdeaux*, and there taking shipping would needes goe serue the king of *Portingale*. The king was very glad of their seruice, and thereupon leuied his forces again in purpose to giue his enemy battell in the field. But diuers of the nobilitie such as had not giuen their consents to his election, being offended with the Cittizens of *Lisbone*, whose authoritie in that behalfe preuailed, refused to take armes at his commaundement. The King hereuppon aduising with his counsell, they perswaded him to make no longer delay in the matter, but to go forth against his enemy with such power as he had already : how there was no other meanes to set the Kingdome in quiet : that it behooued him to make way for his fortunes by the sword, and not be discouraged though his enemy were of greater puissance than he, for oftentimes it fell out, and examples were plentifull, that great numbers were ouerthrowne by small handfules : lastly, that he should propose to himselfe the example of *Henrie*, the father of the king of *Castile* then raigning, who by the sword had conquered that Kingdome, and by the sword maintained his conquest. Encouraged with these and such like speeches, he brought his army into the field, consisting of tenthousand men. The Englishmen seeing themselues ouermatched in number, gaue the King counsell, that he should not abide in the plaines, but seeke some place of strong situation to encampe in, where the enemy might  
make

make no approche but to his disaduantage. Such a place was found, which they likewise so fortified by their industrie, and compassed on euery side with sundry impediments, that but by one onely entrance, and that not very large, there was no possible meanes to come at them. In the Spanish army, the French men carried greatest sway by reason of the kings fauour, who ordered all his affaires by their counsell and direction : which things stirred vp enuie in the Spaniards hearts, as those that could by no meanes endure, so great hope should be reposed in the ayd of strangers. This also much encreased their grudge, that when the King had brought his army to the place of battell, the French men sued importunately to haue the leading of the vauntguard. When they approached neere their enemyes, the French men perswaded to giue battell presently, but the Spaniards counselled to deferre it till the next morning, because night was then at hand. But the Frenchmens perswasion tooke place : who as soone as the signe of battell was giuen, ran furiously vpon their enemyes, and assailed them with great violence. The fight was maintained with great force and courage on both sides : but the valour and skill of the English archers here approoued it selfe, as it had oftentimes done in other places. For the showers of arrowes which they sent amongst the Frenchmen, so galled their horses, and distressed their men, that the greatest part of them being slaine the residue were all taken prisoners. The King of *Spainne* with the rest of his forces to the number of twenty thousand, was two miles behind when the French men gaue this ouer-hasty onset : and when word was brought him, that they were dangerously engaged, and in perill to be all slaine, he was very desirous to haue come to their rescue, but he could not bring his souldiers forward. For it was determined amongst them, that seeing the french men would needes seeme valiant aboue the rest, and had vaunted themselves with so great brauery, they would giue them leaue to goe through with

The King of  
*Portugale*  
through the  
English mens  
ayde obtaineth a notable  
victorie.

T

their

their enterprife alone, and disclaime all interest in the successe of their proceedings. A little before night the King of *Spaine* drewe neere to his enemy, who vpon aduertisement thereof, first placed his men againe in order of battell, and then gaue commaundement on paine of death, that all such as had any prisoners should presently kill the, least in the ensuing conflict, they might happen to recouer armes and ioyne with the enemy. Surely it was a cruell sight, and such a one as mooued even the conquerours themselues to pittie and teares: but there was no remedy, they must doe as they were commaunded. There was about a thousand of these prisoners, all which were consumed by a cowardly kind of death; so as it appeared, their fellowes which dyed valiantly before in fight were much more happy then they, who being both by fortune and their owne vertue preferued, after assurance giuen by the enemy, and receiued by them according to the law of armes, fell into extreame calamity at such time as they thought themselves most secure of life and safety, and were slaine by the conquerour, not enraged and angry as in the fury of battell, but being now at peace with them and euen himsele abhorring such an vnnaturall slaughter. The Portingales through the great aduantage of their ground, ouerthrew their enemies againe; and in this second battell was mercy shewed to no man. They that could, saued themselves by flight, the rest were all slaine. The Spaniards mist of their number about seauen thousand. Afterwards (as the custome of Princes is when they haue performed many notable mischiefes) a truce was agreed vpon. So the King of *Spaine* dismissed his souldiers, and the King of *Portugale* was receiued with great triumph into *Lisbone*.

About the same time the French men recouered all that was holden by certaine Brigants in the country of *Tholous* & the places there adioining. The *Gascones* for that the wars they made in *France* was greatly to their enriching, did willingly serue vnder the King of *England*: and if they had been

genty



gently and respectfully vsed, they would neuer haue changed their Lord. But the King of *Englands* Sonne by his strange behauiour alienated the greatest part of the nobility from him, in such sort that they forsooke him, & put themselves vnder protection of the French King. Besides this, his officers vsed the *Gascones* disdainfully as vnworthy to whome any charge in the common wealth should be committed. Herevpon grew hatred betweene them, and by this occasion *Charles* the fift recovered all againe, as hath been already declared.

Whilst the warres were yet hotly pursued between the two Popes, the souldiers of *Clement* had besieged *Urbane* in a certaine castle of *Italy*, and if money had come to content them he had surely beene taken. But the Bishops treasure at *Auinion* was already so wasted, that the sume of twenty thousand frankes which should be distributed amongst the souldiers, could not possibly be raised. This dissenti-  
Pope *Urbane* besieged.  
 on betweene the two Popes, drew almost all the Princes of Christendom into sundry factions, as hath beene shewed before. These miseries and many other wherewith the Clergie should sometimes be afflicted, a certaine *Franciscane* Fryer had long since foretolde in the time of *Pope Innocent*: and being for the same cast in prison at *Auinion*, had lost his head for his labour, but that he confirmed his sayings by authoritie of scripture.

We haue spoken of *Ferdinando* king of *Portingall*, which left behinde him one onely daughter named *Beatrice*, married to the King of *Spaine*. Now my author declareth how he vnderstood afterward, that she was begotten by the king of *Portugall* vppon a certaine Ladie whome he had rauished, and whose husband he had chased out of the kingdome: and that his daughter so borne was afterwards by *Pope Urbane* made legitimate. And moreouer, at such time as the marriage was in treaty betweene this Lady and the King of *Spaine*, this matter was also brought in controuersie. But the King of *Portugall* to remoue all  
T 2
doubts

doubts, dealt in such sort with his nobilitie and chieftest of the citties, that they all solemnly promised him, not to acknowledge any other soueraigne after his death, then this his onely daughter, neither to admitte any man else to the succession of the crowne, but him that should haue her in marriage. Assoone as he was departed out of this life, the noble men were desirous the inheritance should passe to the King of *Spaine*: but the citties for hatred they bare to the Spanyards, aduanced him to the crowne, of whom we haue oftentimes spoken before, namely the base brother of the King deceased. And because at such time as the king of *Portugall* dyed, the Ladies husband remayned still aliue, most men thought that the childe begotten betweene them, was borne in adultery. Moreouer that couple had liued fīue yeeres together as man and wife, whē the king doting in his wicked and frantick affection, attempted this dishonourable practise, not only for a Prince, but for any other person, most vnworthy and shamefull. The wretched husband being robbed of his wife, gat him to the King of *Spaine*: and after the King of *Portingales* decease returned againe to *Lisbon*, but receiued his wife no more, following therein the counsell of his friends, who alledged great reasons to the contrary. Afterward he was slaine in a certaine skirmish: and it is likely he had small ioy of his life, considering the extreame iniury and disgrace receiued from such a one, of whom he had no hope to be reuenged.

At such time as *Lisbon* was besieged by the Spanyards, the king of *Portingale* sent Embassadors into *England*, exhorting and requesting the Duke of *Lancaster* to succour him in this great necessitie, against such an enemy as both possessed a kingdome which was none of his owne, and fought also by force to seize vpon the crowne of *Portingale*, whereto he had no more right then to the other. Vpon hearing of their ambassage, it was concluded that the Duke of *Lancaster* should be sent into *Portingale*, and all things

things were prepared and made ready for his voyage, when suddainly the Admirall of *France* landing with an army in *Scotland*, from thence made warre vpon the English, as hath bene before declared. Hereuppon the Dukes iourney was stayed. Neuerthelesse the King of *Portingale* fought prosperously, and vanquished his enemy in two battells as is shewed already. And after this victorie returning to *Lisbone*, by aduise of his counsell, he sent Ambassadors againe to the king of *England*, and the Duke of *Lancaster*, desiring him if euer he meant to attempt any thing against his aduersarie the king of *Spaine*, that he would not neglect the present opportunitie. For twise he himselfe had already defeated him in battell, and driuen him from the field: now did he quake and tremble for distrust of his estate, and it were an easie matter to ouerthrowe him whollie, specially if they should assaile him with both their forces vnited together. Scarce could he know on which side to turne him, his affaires and his counsels would be all so confounded: and that his state might be more violently shaken, it seemed best in his opinion to make present inuasion vpon him before he should recouer his strength or bethinke him of the danger. When these and many other like matters had bene deliuered by the Ambassadors, it pleased the King that the Duke of *Lancaster* should now at length proceede with his voyage before vndertaken. So with a certaine number of horsemen, and more then two thousand archers, accompanied with his wife and children, he tooke shipping at a certain haven in *Wales*, whither the *Portingales* vpon aduertisement from their ambassadors, had before sent fise and twentie shippes and Gallies to attend him. And because he saw great likelyhood of troubles to arise in *England*, & that he was enuyed by many which were in authority about the King his nephew, he was very glad and desirous to goe this iourney. His first landing was in the haven of *Brest*, which towne because the Englishmen refused to

Page.127.

The Duke of  
*Lancaster* say-  
leth into *Port-*  
*ugal*.  
*Bristowe*.



restore to the Duke of *Britaine*, was at that time by the Britons and Frenchmen together besieged. But the Duke of *Lancasters* puissance enforced the Britons to raise their siege. Then directed he his course towards *Cologne* a towne in *Spaine*. For after much deliberation it was generally thought more honour to land first in their enemies country, then to go streight to their friends. But the towne was so strongly fortified as their attempt and endeavour was vaine. Therefore loosing from thence they sayled to *Compostella*, into which towne after some parly they were honourably receiued.

The Duke of  
Lancaster arri-  
ueth in  
Spaine.

As soone as the King of *Spaine* heard tydings of the Englishmens arriual, he tooke counsell with certaine French Lords whome he chiefly fauoured, concerning his affaires, and what they thought of the Englishmens proceedings. They were absolutely of opinion, that the king of *Portugale* should marry the Duke of *Lancasters* daughter, and therefore that it behou'd him to require ayde of the French king: who both in respect of his owne good disposition, and the most strict and auncient alliance betweene *Spaine* and *Fraunce*, would not faile of his friendly dutie in that behalfe. Moreouer assuring him that there were a great number in *Fraunce* so ill affected to idlenes that nothing could happen more according to their desires, then to meete with any occasion of millitary employment. When they had giuen him this counsell, they further aduised him to take order, that all weake holds, churches, and such like, whereinto the country people had conueyed their goods for feare of the forraging souldiers should be beaten downe. For those places were such as could not be defended, and if they were taken, the prey and pillage therein would afforde greates profite and aduantage to the enemy. The King to whō this counsell seemed not amisse, authorised the French men to cast downe what they thought good at their discretion, and withall to seize whatsoever they found in them  
(after

(after a day prefixed) to their owne commodity. The French king being solicited by the king of *Spayne* for ayd, required him to be of good courage, for within short space he would bendall the forces he was able to make against the English nation: who being once subdued, he would send store of souldiers into *Spaine*, by whose helpe he should be enabled, not onely to brydle and restrayne, but to breake and confound the puissance of both his aduersaries. Whilst the Englishmen wintred at *Compostella*, they made often rodes into the country, and brought certaine townes vnder their subiection. In the meane time the king of *Portingale* wrote diuerse Letters to the Duke of *Lancaster* full of great kindnesse and affection. But counsell was giuen the Duke, that he should delay the matter no longer, nor negociate with the King any further by letters: that it was very behooueful for him, now he had proceeded thus farre, to goe through with his affaires as speedily as might be: the French men were subtile fellowes, the Spaniards had small faithfulness: and it might so fall out that the French men, by whome the King of *Spaine* was wholly carryed, would perswade him to agreement with the King of *Portingale* vppon some indifferent conditions. These reasons were approoued, and therevppon the Duke sent word to the King of *Portingale* that he was desirous to speak with him, whereto he condescended and so they met at a place appointed. After much communication, it was concluded that the Duke of *Lancaster* should stay all the winter at *Compostella*, sending abroad his souldiers to forrey the country in the meane while, and as soone as the spring time approached, to aduance their Standards both together against the enemy, in what part of the Kingdome soeuer he remayned. Also that the King of *Portugale* should take his choyce which of the Dukes daughters he would haue in marriage. He chose *Phillip* the Dukes daughter by his first wife. The matters thus accomplished, the duke returned to *Compostella*. The King of *Spaine* being disqui-

ered

eted by the English souldiers, which wasted his country and forced his townes to yeeld, meruailed much that there came no ayd all this while out of *Fraunce* : but the French Lords alwaies encouraged him, putting him in comfort, that assoone as the wars in *England* were dispatched, he should not faile of sufficient succours.

The French King maketh great preparation to invade *England*.

The French King, vppon a meruailous desire to inuade *England*, assembled the greatest puissance he could possibly make. There were numbred of noblemen and gentlemen about twenty thousand, and more then fifteene hundred shippes, abundantly furnished with all necessaries, even to smallest trifles. And although this preparation was such, as a greater or more sumptuous had not been seen in mans remembrance, yet (as it often happeneth in such occasions) the report thereof in *England* farre exceeded the truth, and was extended aboue measure. In so much that publicke prayers and supplications were daily offered to God, that he would auert and turne from them this imminent mischeife. All the hauens and port townes where they suspected the French men might land, were strongly fortified and planted with Garrisons : and an vnmeasurable masse of mony was leuied, amounting to the summe of twenty hundred thousand florēs, so as there was no man in the whole kingdome which felt not the waight of this heavy burthen. All good and well disposed persons bewayled the present state of their country; but idle vnthrifts, male-contentes, and such as had nothing to take to, were of nothing more desirous. The French army was now fully furnished and all things put in a readines in the hauen of *Sluse* in *Flaunders*, nothing was wanting, but onely the Duke of *Berryes* presence. He neuer allowed this enterprise, and at his coming thither, when consultation was had about setting forward on their iourney, he perswaded the contrary with diuers reasons, as the roughnes of the winter weather (for it was then about Christmas) and the tender age of the King whome he thought in no wise was to be committed to the

vicer.



uncertainty of winds and seas at that vnseasonable time of the yeere. His counsell preuailed, and therevpon the voyage was put of till the next spring; the preparation whereof stood *France* in little lesse then thirty hundred thousand Frankes. It was oftentimes reported for certainty to the King of *Portugale*, that the French Kings army was already entered into *England*. Wherevpon some gaue him counsell, that he should not be to forward in marrying his wife which he had lately affianced, but rather to expect what issue the wars would come to: for if it should happen the King of *England* to go by the worse (as it was likely enough at that time) the Duke of *Launcasters* friendship would then do him small pleasure. The King following their aduise, dissembled his marriage, and for a while made nomotion at all thereof, but with kind letters and costly presents still continued the Dukes fauour for his advantage.

*Leo* King of *Armenia* who had been driuen out of his country by the *Tartars*, and came lately before into *France*, being not a little sory that so great dissension should grow between two such puissant Princes as the French King and the English, of a certaine godly zeale and good disposition sayled ouer into *England*, to make a tryall if he could doe ought in establisshing a peace between them. The King of *England* gaue him patient care in discoursing his miseries and banishment, and how the power of the Turkes and Barbarians daily encreased through the mutuall wars and dissention of the Christian Princes. And when by occasion hereof he descended to the point, to exhort to loue and concord, the King answered, that he should first deale with his aduersary to discharge his great army; and that done, for his part he was not so peruerse, but he would willingly embrace whatsoeuer was agreeable to equity and reason. Herevpon he returned to the French King, who seemed nothing affected, nor inclinable to peace.

---

*The third Booke.*


---

*Jaques le Gris  
sir Iohn de Ca-  
rogne.*



It fortuned in *Fraunce*, that a certaine gentleman of the Earle of *Alaunsons* house, rauished another mans wife whilst her husband was absent in a forraine country. Assoone as he returned, the sorrowfull Lady with teares in her eyes and shame in her countenance, declared vnto him the violence shee had suffered. Her husband complained to the Earle of *Alaunson*, and the party accused denied the deed. Now the Earle shewing himselfe more fauourable to the offender, then to him that had the iniury, the plaintiffe appealed to the Parliament of *Paris*. A whole yeere and more the matter was there canuassed ; and in conclusion, when the one still auouched the fact, and the other stood stoutly in denyall, it was decreed, that the controuerfie should be decided by combate. So at a certaine day which either themselues had chosen, or the iudges appointed, they encountred one another first on horse-backe, after on foote. Not blind fortune, which otherwise is wont to beare sway in such cases, but iustice and true valour shewed their force in this conflict. For he that held his wiues chastity deerer then his owne life, and was not affraid to venture his head in defence of the same, by his aduersaries destruction, made it manifest to the worlde, that there

A notable ex-  
ample of

there is a God of vengeance, which will not suffer secret wickednesse to escape unpunished. After he was slaine, the hangman drew his bodie to the gallowes and hung it vp : whereas if he had fortun'd to get the victorie, the woman for falsly accusing him, should by decree of the Parliament haue bene burned, and her husband after his death, put to the same reproch which now was vsed to his aduersarie. The whole company of honourable spectators highly extolled the conqueror, and applauded his victory with deserued commendation. Moreouer the French king out of a certaine princely respect and inclination, not suffering so worthy an acte to passe vnrewarded, gaue him presently a thousand franks, and from thenceforth a pension of two hundreth pounds by the yeere, during his life.

*diuine iustice.*

*The French king was present with most of his nobility.*

About this time deceased the King of *Arragon* : who a little before his death calling his sonnes vnto him, exhorted them to mutuall loue and concord : & for as much as in so great partaking of Princes, he onely had stood indifferent betweene the two Popes, he desired his sonnes that they would doe the like, and not apply themselues to any fact on till the truth were more manifestly discuffed. Neuerthelesse when he was dead, Pope *Clement* and the French king, drew *Iohn* his eldest sonne to their party. But when he came to be crowned, the citties would not consent, vnlesse he were first solemnly sworne not to leuy any tributes or exactions of money, other then such as had bene formerly accustomed.

*The death of Peter King of Arragon.*

*Edward* Prince of *Wales* as long as he liued, was for his noble chivalry and glorious fortune held in great admiration, and many sought his friendship and alliance. Amongst others there was also a league betweene him and the King of *Arragon*, vnder these conditions. That the Englishmen should at no time make warres vppon the realme of *Arragon* : and in consideration hereof, that the King of *Arragon* should yeerely send fise hundreth horse to serue the



Duke of *Aquitaine* against any enemy whatsoeuer, or if he could not conueniently finde so many horsemen, he should pay him a certaine summe of mony. Now for the space of ten yeeres he had neither done the king of *England* any seruice, nor payd him any money. The Duke of *Lancaster* therefore (to whom at his setting forth towards *Portugall*, the king his nephew had giuen authority to demaund all rights and seruices belonging to the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, either from the king of *Arragon*, or any other) thinking that so great a masse of money would much pleasure him in his present affaires, wrote letters requiring those arrerages, and sent them to the King of *Arragon* by the Archbishop of *Burdeaux*. Who at his coming found the King very sicke, so as he dyed within few dayes after. The Archbishop neuerthelesse still prosecuted his suite, and the new king offended with his importunity cast him in prison at *Barcelone*. Whereof when the Duke of *Lancaster* was informed, he gaue commandement to the English garrison at *Lourde* (which is the only strong and impregnable castle in those quarters) that they should infest the *Arragonians* with warre, and doe them as much displeasure as they could. They were nothing slack in performing his commaund, and wrought great annoyance to the country, especially to the merchants, whom they intercepted at euery passage and spoyled of their commodities. The people of *Barcelone* being vexed with their daily excursions, and caught vp as a prey by the rauenous souldiers, made such meanes to their king by intercession of the nobility, that he was content to release his prisoner.

The Duke of  
*Lancaster*  
ambassadour  
imprisoned  
by the King  
of *Arragon*.

After that by perswasion of the Duke of *Berry*, the voyage into *England* was deferred, as we haue shewed a little before: as soone as the spring came on, it was appointed that the Constable of *Fraunce* with twelue thousand men should be sent to inuade *England*, and besides that certaine forces should be likewise conueid into *Spaine* to the reliefe

liefe of King *John* against the Englishmen & Portingales. Vppon this occasion a new subsidy beeing sessed againe through all *Fraunce*, ye might haue seen many country people and towne-dwellers, which not knowing how otherwise to helpe themselues, abandoned their lands and tenements, and departed either into *Henault*, or into the Bishoprick of *Liege*, because those places at that time were free from the burthen of such intollerable exactions. The succours sent into *Spaine* were six thousand horsemen, vnder conduct of the Duke of *Burbon*.

We haue told you before how the king of *Portugal* expecting the successe of the English warre, dissembled politickly with the Duke of *Lancaster* in the meane while. Now when he saw that *England* was discharged of the daunger, and that the French kings army was dissolved, he sent some forthwith to affiance the Duke of *Lancasters* Phillip the Duke of Lancasters daughter married to the King of Portugal. daughter in his name, whome within fewe daies after being honourably conducted vnto him, he espoused. After the marriage he sent worde to his father in lawe, that he should draw out his forces as soone as he pleased, and he would doe the like, that so they might ioyntly together proceede against their enemy. In the meane while the French men well appointed and gallantly furnished, arriued in *Spaine*. After whose comming, consultation being had whether it were best to bring their forces into the field, or to place their men in garrisons, when fundry opinions rose amongst them, the Spaniards perswading battell, the French men the contrary, it was referred by the King to one of the French Capraines of most experience, to determine the matter at his discretion. And he in regard the Duke of *Burbon* their Generall was not yet come, thought it altogether vnfitting to fight with the enemy, but rather to bestow their souldiers in places conuenient till neede should require: for by this meanes it would come to passe, that the Englishmen ranging ouer all the country, through the intemperate heate of the climate, should fall into ma-

ny dangerous diseases : and although for the present they became Lords of diuerse places, yet should they not be able to maintaine them long : and when their strength began once to decrease, it would be an easie matter to recover all againe, especially after the Duke of *Burbons* coming, with the rest of their forces. This determination tooke place, and so immediately the men of warre were conueyd into those parts of *Spaine* which border vpon *Portugall*, to defend the frontiers of the kingdome.

The Constable who was appointed to make inuasion vpon *England*, had his army prepared, and his ships ready rigged in a certaine hauen of *Britaine*. Diuerse other Lords of *Fraunce* were likewise ready to be embarked at *Harflew* in *Normandy*, whose direction was to haue landed their forces together with his, vpon the coast of *England*. But there happened a suddaine aduenture in the meane time, whereby their whole enterprise was ouerthrowne, and that ye may the better conceiue the discourse, we will rehearse the matter from his first originall. It is declared before, how *Charles* of *Blois* being taken prisoner by the Englishmen that ayded the Countesse of *Mountfort*, was set at liberty vpon condition he should pay two hundred thousand crownes to the King of *England* for his ransom, and for assurance of the same, left his two sonnes *Iohn* & *Guy* in hostage. It fortun'd afterward that he was slaine in battell against the Duke of *Britaine*. After which time the Englishmen at the Duke of *Britaines* request, came thorough the middest of *Fraunce* with a great power to ayde him. Whereupon the French king feating least the Duke by this occasion should yield himselfe subiect to the King of *England*, made composition with him as hath beene before declared. Whereat the Englishmen (who had trauelled a long journey through many perills and great difficulties, to come into *Britaine*) were exceedingly offended, and as soone as they came home, made complaint to their king of the Dukes discourtesie and ingratitude. And to the



the intent to worke him as great displeasure, they made this offer to *Iohn* the sonne of *Charles of Bloys*, (whome they held still as pledge for his fathers ransome, his brother being deceased there already) that if he would receive and holde the Duchy of *Britaine* of the King of *England*, and doe homage and fealtie to him for the same, he should be deliuered out of prison, and set in possession of his Dukedome, and besides, haue in marriage *Phillip* the Duke of *Lancasters* daughter; the same which was afterwards *Queene* of *Portugall*. The offer of marriage he was well contented to accept, but to seeme disloyall to the French king, or be an enemy to the crowne of *Fraunce*, that he would neuer consent to. Whereupon remayning stedfast in his resolution, he was againe committed to prison. Now the Constable of *Fraunce* *Sir Oliner Clifton*, (who although his inheritance lay in *Britaine*, yet loued not the Duke, and the Duke on the other side hated him more then any man else, because vpon the Kings commaund, he had troubled his country with warre) had a daughter whom he much desired to marry with this *Iohn* that was prisoner in *England*, thinking it would be a great aduancement to his house if he might bring it to passe. Therefore when he had cast in his minde by what meanes he might best purchase his liberty, he began secretly to practise with the Duke of *Ireland* (a man whom the king highly fauoured and much delighted in his company) promising to giue him six score thousand frankes if he would vndertake to procure his enlargement. The Duke accepted his offer: notwithstanding as long as the Duke of *Lancaster* remained in the realme, in regard the matter had beene motioned before for his daughter, he could effect nothing of his purpose. But after he was gone, the Duke of *Ireland* desirous of the gold, entreated the King (with whom no man was more familiar then himselfe) that in consideration of his seruices and paines taken in the common wealth, he would bestowe the prisoner vpon him, for whose ransome

*John of Blois  
marryeth the  
Constables  
daughter of  
Fraunce.*

*The Castle  
of Ermine.*

some he might get a great masse of money. The king who was altogether carryed by this man, in such sorte as he both neglected and hated his vnckles in respect of him, did willingly condescend to his request. As soone as the prisoner was deliuered into his hands, he conueid him ouer to *Boloine*, receiuing there three score thousand frankes, the rest to be payd him at *Paris*: where the Constable expecting the young mans arriual, when he came receiued him with great honour, and married him forthwith to his daughter. How much this matter troubled the Duke of *Britaine*, he may well coniecture that remembreth the discourse, and considereth the circumstances of such things as haue bene heretofore rehearsed touching the warres in *Britaine*. For he sawe that by this marriage his whole estate was called in question, and like to be much endangered. Therefore he prepared reuenge, hauing the thought thereof more conuerfant in his mind, then any other. And at such time as the Constable had his army about him in the Dukes country, ready to haue passe into *England* as we told ye before, the Duke summoned all his nobility to be at *Vannes* by a certaine day, for weightie affaires that he had to consult of: desiring the Constable also by letters, that he would honour the assembly with his presence. The Constable though he were nothing ignorant of the mutuall grudge betweene them, yet presuming vpon the greatnesse of his office, and the authoritie of his present emploiment against the King enemies, came thither as he was requested. After some consultation had about the matters they met for, the Duke as it were for pleasure and recreation, inuited certaine of the chiefe Noble men, and amongst them also the Constable, into a certaine castle there by which he had lately begonne to build, and now in a manner finished. When they came thither, the Duke stoutly dissembling his purpose, and himselfe leading the Constable from place to place, as it had bene to doe him the more honour, at last brought him to a certaine

tain tower of farre more sumptuous and costly building then the rest, desiring him to view it well, and if he espied any fault, that he would frankely tell him his opinion. The Constable entred in alone, and mounting vpon the first story the doores were presently closed beneath, and certaine armed men rushing suddainly forth, laide hands vpon him and bound him in fetters. The hangman was likewise ready by the Dukes appointment to haue taken away his life. Neuerthelesse at the humble entreaty and teares of a certaine noble man that came in his company, the Duke hardly relenting delayed his execution, commanding him to be kept streitly in yrons. But within fewe houres after, anger boyling in his brest, & admitting no other thought but reuenge, his wrath not like others being any whit aswaged, but rather more vehemently encreased by respit and consideration, he againe commanded that his head should be stricken of. But what labour and care, what perill and difficulty he againe sustained, by whose meanes the Constable had hitherto beene saued; how many, how sorrowfull, how effectuall matters he alleadged, before he could moue the Dukes most obdurate minde to any sense or feeling of compassion: none can conceiue but hee which knoweth that the Duke long since had resolved vpon nothing more certainly then by one meanes or other, to bring the Constable to destruction; none but he which knoweth that the Duke for many yeres together had with incredible desire hunted for this opportunity; none but he which considereth that it was a most vnnaturall & outrageous kinde of anger, which vpon time to muse & thinke of it, was not quenched but enflamed, and could be satisfied with nothing, but the bloud and slaughter of a man which was brought in danger by deceit, and vnder the pretence of friendship. Therefore that the Constable was saued from the Dukes deadly intent, next to the prouidence of the euerliuing God, he was onely to thanke this man for his deliuerance; who immediately made interces-



sion for him, and neuer rested till by extreame importunity he had extorted from the Duke, the assurance of his friends life and safety. So at length the Duke was contented to set the Constable at liberty, vppon condition that he should pay him an hundreth thousand crownes before he departed, and deliuer three castles into his hands, to remaine to him and his heires for euer. Wherof assoone as the Duke had taken possession, he dismissed his prisoner, who within two dayes after came to *Paris* & made greuous complaint to the King of the great iniurie and violence he had suffered. The king gaue him comfort and hope of redresse, but the Kings vnckles vppon relation of the circumstances, were so farre from pittying his mischaunce, that they rather seemed angry and offended, because when he had all things in a readinesse for his iourney, he neglected his affaires and the opportunity of the season, to followe matters of pleasure and idle disporte, giuing rash credyt to such a one, as both he himselfe hated, and who he knew well enough, had long since sought aduantage of his life. The Admirall and the rest of the Lords which were ready to take shipping in *Normandy*, vppon vnderstanding of these occurrents, dismissed their forces. So it came to passe that this expedition against *England*, which by the generall consent and good liking of the whole kingdome had beene most certainly resolved and concluded vppon, was by these occasions that yee haue heard, vtterly ouerthrowne and disappointed. At the same time also the young Duke of *Gelders* proclaymed warres against the French King, and sent him his defiance: for the king of *England*, for so doing had giuen him a pension of foure thousand frankes.

1390.

The chiefe motiues that stirred the Duke of *Britaine* to this fact before mentioned, were first the mortall hatred he bare to the Constable: and secondly, that he might thereby reconcile himselfe to the King of *England*, whose displeasure he had mightily procured by entering in league

with the French King. Most part of the noblemen of *Fraunce* perswaded the King in the Constables behalfe, that he should not suffer such a deed to escape vnpunished. Herevpon messengers were sent to the Duke, to let him vnderstand that both the King and his vncles and the whole counsell of state were highly offended with him, because through his violent apprehension and detayning of the Constable, he had frustrated the kings purpose of inuading his enemies. Wherefore their will and pleasure was, that he should make full restitution both of the mony and castles which he had wrongfully taken : and concerning his disappointment of the voyage, that he should come in person to *Paris*, there to render an account of his doings. The duke when he had receiued this message, after some deliberation of the matter, made answer to this effect: that he not only nothing repented him of what he had done to the Constable, but was also exceeding fory that he did no more, and that it greeued him at the heart as often as he remēbred it, that euer he suffered him to go away aliue. As for the castles, seeing he had them in his possession, he would by no meanes restore them againe, nor neuer depart with them vnles the King put him out by force. The mony was all bestowed amongst those that helpt him to defend his country against the Constable, thē whome he had not a more mortall enemy in the world. For interrupting the iourney into *England*, he had neuer any such thought in his mind, it was a priuate case between the Constable and him, and whatsoever was done, proceeded of no other intent, but only desire of reuenge.

Yee haue heard, how at such time as inuasion was feared in *England*, great summes of money were leuied for the maintenance of war, to defend the Realme. Now, when the French men altering their purpose, returned without performance of their enterprise, many gaue out speeches that it was vniustly done of the kings officers to keepe still the mony, the daunger being auoyded without any charge

or expences. This muttering being stilled for a while, vpon occasion of a new subsidy demaunded for payment of the souldiers wages which had byn placed in garrisons, was againe renewed more boldly then before. The commons tooke the matter very haynously, and framed grieuous accusations against certaine persons, through whose dishonesty and vnfaithfulnes, they said the whole treasure of the kingdome, and the goods of the subiects, were wastefully consumed. The King was led altogether by a few of the meaner sort, men of base quality and ignorant disposition. But especially, the Duke of *Ireland* had him in a manner at command, and posselt him in such sort, as it seemed he had enchanted the young kings affections. For whatsoeuer he sayd was done, and there was nothing so vniust or contrary to reason, which the King would not credit vpon his report. He brought the kings vncles in suspicion and hatred, so as they had much ado to keepe themselves out of daunger. As for them, they were nothing displeased with the peoples complaints: for by this occasion they saw many alterations would happen. Therfore they inclined to the people, allowing their pretence, and encouraging them to proceed as they had already begunne. In conclusion it came to this passe, that at a certaine time when the King and his nobility were assembled together, the Londoners made grieuous complaint of the new subsidies and exactions which from time to time were imposed vpon them: and which grieued them most of all, that they saw no good or necessary vse wherto all that mony was conuerted. They thought the King was not made priuy to any thing, and therefore they required that a day might be assigned to the kings collectors and receiuors to yeeld an account of their receits and payments, whereby it might appeare, who had carryed themselves vprightly in their office, & who otherwise, that the one might be retained, & the other discharged. The Duke of *Gloucester* one of the kings vncles, had giuen them counsell & direction to frame their speech

in

At Saint  
Georges feast  
at Windsor.



in this manner. But the King assoone as he heard their sute, reiected it at the first, and would haue put of his aunswere till another time. But the people still vrged their demaund, and pressed vpon him with more earnestnes, because many of the noble men about him did opely allow of their petitiō. So at length he was contented, that within a few daies after an account should be taken of all those officers, and that his vnclcs and certaine other whome the people required, should haue the examination of the matter. In many of the officers was found great fraud and extortion, all which the law condemned to death. Immediately vpon receit of the accompts, the King accompanied with his minion the Duke of *Ireland*, tooke his iourney into another part of the Realme. Where vnderstanding that certaine of his household were put to execution at *London*, he was exceedingly mooued to displeasure both against the commons, and against his vnclcs. For the Duke of *Ireland* had as it were imprinted this conceit in his mind, that they went about to depose him from his crowne, and therefore neuer ceased to incense and prouoke him (who of himselfe was too apprehensue of such occasions) till he had perswaded him to make warre against them. So the Duke was made general, and by the Kings appointment leuied some fiteene thousand men. But before he would march forward with his army, he sent a certaine freind of his disguised in the habite of a marchant, to *London*, where the kings vnclcs were assembled, to discouer their counsels and manner of proceedings. But this gentleman (most contrary to his expectation) I wot not by what misfortune, was discouered himselfe, and when he had reuealed to the Lords certaine matters concerning the King, he was put to death. This occasion as ye may well coniecture, did mightily aggrauate the kings displeasure.

Sir Robert  
Tresilian.

Now, when the Duke of *Ireland* saw the power of his aduersaries approching against him, as fierce and stout as he seemed before, yet performed he nothing worthy of a va-

Sir Robert  
Beauchampe, sir  
John Salisbu-  
ry, sir Nicho-  
las Brambre.

liant or discreet commaunder. For he was absolutely perswaded out of a selfe-guilty opinion of his own desert, that if it were his fortune to be taken in battell, there would be no other way with him, but death. Therefore as soone as he had placed his men in order, he began to provide for his own security, retyring into the rereward, to the intent that as occasion should serue, he might be the readier to conuay himselfe out of daunger. The souldiers hearing a suddaine rumor that their Generall had forsaken them, abandoned themselves presently to flight, without exchanging any stroke with their enemy. Very fewe were slaine, and those only in chase, certaine knights were taken and put to death at *London*. The Duke of *Ireland* accompanied with one or two of his freinds, fled ouer the seas into *Holland*, whither he had long before caused all his treasure to be conueyed. For albeit he had the King wholly on his side, yet he much mistrusted and feared his vncles, of whome he had so well deserued, that nothing but viter enmity wasto be expected at their hands. These troubles being thus quieted, and the noble men yet hearing no newes of the King; it was thought conuenient, that the Archbishop of *Canterburie* should be addresssed vnto him in the name of his vncles & the people, signifying how they were al very desirous of his presence, and that if it pleased him to repaire to *London*, he should be honourably and louingly receiued. For they sought nothing but the wel-fare and tranquillity of the kingdome, which it was impossible for him to maintaine without the good willes of his subiects. That it was not without causes of great importance, that some were openly punished, and others driuen out of the realme; for as much as through the authority and ill gonerment of those persons, the honour of the kingdome was impaired. What the noblemen had done in that behalfe, was for the generall good of the common wealth, and as the state then stood that it was a matter of necessity, and therefore he had no iust cause of displeasure against them. Although the  
King

King were highly offended with the occasions which had passed before: yet vpon these and such other reasons as the Archbishop vsed, he was perswaded to come to *London*. After he had remainned there a while, a Parliament was called at *Westminster*, where the Lords and Prelates of the realme renued their othe of allegiance to him, which they had formerly sworne to his vncles in his behalfe: for he was now attayned to the age of one and twenty yeeres, the age accustomably prescribed for the administration of publicke affaires.

In this meane while, the Duke of *Lancaster* subdued many townes in *Spaine*, and the King of *Portugall* was not idle but in an other part of the country, brought much into his father in lawes subiection. And when they had practised this kind of warre-fare for a time, at length they ioyned their forces together, to giue their enemies battell in the field. The King of *Spaine* in the meane season meruailed much at the Duke of *Burbons* long tariance and delay, whose only comming he had waited for all this while with so great expectation. The French mens aduise being againe demaunded, they persisted resolute in their first opinion, holding it altogether vnexpedient to giue the Englishmen battell, though they had gotten many townes, for those might easily be recouered hereafter: and it must needs come to passe, that the Englishmen being tyred with the continuall trauels of warre, sometimes ouercome with extremity of heate, otherwhiles enfeebled through the subtiltie of the piercing ayre entring in at the open pores of their bodies, should fall into sundry diseases and infirmities. And indeed so it happened. For by reason of the vehement heat and saddaine cold, which they were forced to abide in the day time, through the Suns scorching violence and their owne trauell, in the night by occasion of their watches, & open lodgings in the field, diuers pestilent sicknesses were engendred amongst them. Besides this, most part of their horses not finding wherewith to sustaine them

The English-  
mens mieries  
vnder the  
Duke of *Lan-*  
*caster* in  
*Spaine*.



them in the country, perished for hunger. Herevppon rose many sorrowfull complaints amongst the poore souldiers lamenting their misfortune. The King of *Portugales* counsell being asked in this necessity, he thought it best in regard of the intemperatenes of the season, to withdraw into some of the townes which they had taken, and to discharge the army. The Duke on the other side feared least when their souldiers were dispersed, the Duke of *Burbon* whome he knew to be conning, should surprise them vnawares. Wherevppon resolving as yet not to breake vp their campe, they continued still in the field. But it was lamentable to behold the English, who being altogether vnaccustomed to the intollerable heat of that country, and the drinking of those hot wines, were so afflicted with sicknesses, that the poore wretches with great misery had much ado to sustaine their liues. Then the generall of the horsemen, who could both heare and discern the state of the army more neerly, by reason of his dayly entercourse in all affaires, acquainted the Duke of *Lancaster* with the calamity of his people, and shewed him how the case was such as required both speedy helpe and present resolution. Herevppon it was concluded to dismisse the army, at the tydings wherof, there was great reioycing through the whole campe. Neuertheles they saw no meanes how to returne into their country. By sea they could not, they were too farre within land, and besides, most of them were so feeble and diseased, as they could not possibly brooke the violence of waues & tempests: by land there was no going, for their passage must ly through *Spaine*, *Nauarre* and *Arragon*, kingdōes confederate against them: what should be done in this extremity? An herauld was sent to the enemye, to require a safe conduct for certaine English gentlemen, to come and parly with the King. The Spanyard musing what straunge occasion should moue them, admitted their request: the effect wherof was this: That for as much as their whole army was greuously visited with sickness, the King calling

Sir John Hol-  
land.

to remembrance the miseries of mankind, which are incident to all, would giue leaue to their sicke persons to withdraw themselves into some of his townes, & to abide there till their health might be recouered. And for the rest which were desirous to returne into their countrey, that he would graunt them licence to passe quietly through his kingdome of *Spaine*, and withall to be a meanes to the kings of *Arragon* and *Navarre*, that they would likewise suffer them to trauel in safety through their dominions. The King of *Spaine* after deliberation, condescended to their request vpon condition, that aswel those which went now directly towards their Countrey, as the rest that stayed for recovery of their health, should at their departure be solemnly sworne, neither to returne any more to the Duke of *Lancaster*, nor to come within the confines of *Spaine* vpon any occasion of warre, for the space of six yeeres after. These conditions though they seemed grieuous vnto them, yet so earnest was their desire and affection home-wards, as they would willingly haue accepted them, had they beene much worse. The Duke of *Lancaster* who had compassed this matter by collaterall meanes in another mans name, least he should seeme to haue craued ought at his enemies handes, after the dissoluing of his army, departed againe to *Compostella*, dispersing his sicke people into the townes and villages there adioyning. Of those that went for *England*, diuers Lords and Gentlemen, beside great numbers of the common sort, being vnable to sustaine the violence of their disease, and the trauell of their iourney, ended their liues in the way. In the meane time the Duke of *Burbon* who had lingred a long while, and fetched a great compasse (for he had visited Pope *Clement* at *Auinion*) arriued in *Spaine*: and although he heard tydings of the dissoluing of the English army, yet neuer theles in regard he had proceeded thus farre, he would not now goe out of the country before he had seen the King. The Spaniard was affrayde least if the French souldiers should make any long tariance, or at least-

wife be admitted, they would demaund entertainment, which if he should deny them, they would rob and spoyle his country : therefore within few dayes after the Dukes comming thither (whome otherwise he receiued with all honour and currecie) he declared vnto him, how at that time the enemy being deparred of his owne accord, he had no further imployment for forraine souldiers. The Duke was not only nothing offended with this discharge, but very glad of the occasion to be soone dispatched, for he found the countrey did not agree with his peoples complexion. The Duke of *Lancaster* lay sicke a while at *Compostella*, and vpon the recouery of his strength, hearing of the Duke of *Burbons* departure, he also set his mind vpon returning into his country : for he well perceiued, that by reason of these calamities and afflictions, he was vtterly disabled from going through with his enterprise. Therefore borrowing both men and shipping of the King of *Portu-*

The Duke of *gall*, he set sayles to the wind, and in fower houres after ar-  
*Lancaster* re-riued at *Bayon*. Here may you see how strange and lamenta-  
 turneth out of ble are the aduētures & casualties of mans life, and how vn-  
*Spaine*.

certain are the euent of all our actions, of all our cogitiōs. For this Duke, who sometimes through occasion of foraine warres, and otherwhiles by reason of ciuill discord and rebellion, being restrayned from his purpose, could not when he would, accomplish this voyage, which for many yeeres before he had so ardently desired : now after such time as vpon often inuitements and embassages from the King of *Portugall*, he was come into the kingdome which pertayned to his wiues inheritance, was at length compelled without atchieuing any memorable matter, and with the losse of his souldiers, vnder a colourable submission to his enemy, to leaue all his affayres and intents vnperformed, and to returne home into his owne country.

We haue formerly made mention of the duke of *Gelders* which denounced warres against the realme of *Fraunce*; and that was done in a very proud and contemptuous fashion,



shion, contrary to the accustomed manner of defiance. Now for the better vnderstanding of all circumstances, obserue this discourse. *Reynold* Earle of *Gelders* through prodigality and ryot, had much impouerished his estate ; and when by reason of his wants, hee could hardly maintaine the reputation of his calling, in this distresse he repayred to his vncle the Archbishop of *Colen* for counsell. The Bishop after so sharpe reprehension, vsed these, or the like speeches. Cousen, you see and perceiue wel-enough that there is not any Prince, nor noble man of so small account, which will bestowe his daughter with you in marriage, you haue so spent & consumed your means, and set your selfe so exceedingly in debt. But there is a rich merchant, *Bertold* of *Bertold of Macbline*, whi h you know hath but one only daughter, *Macbline*. to whome in expectation of her large dowry, many great Lords haue beene suters. You cannot make a better match for your selfe than to seize vpon such a bocty. You shall do well therefore to make this offer to her father : that if hee will vndertake with his mony to redeeme those townes and castles which you haue pawned to your creditors, and withall be contēted to release such bonds of debt as he hath of yours already, in consideration hereof you will take his daughter to wife. This counsell was well accepted of the Earle, and so he sent one to make the motion. When *Bertold* had receiued the message, his answer was this: that he should hold it a great honour both to himselfe and all his house, if his daughter might seem worthy to be matched with such a husband: the respects which he thought moued the Earle to desire it, were that he might be discharged frō the danger of his creditors, and possesse his owne without controlment. Therefore he was well content to proceede with the marriage, and dislike not of the conditions proferred, so as these likewise for his part might be added: that if it fortunēd the Earle to dye first, leauing no issue, then all his possessions to remaine entirely to his wife during her life. And if it happened her to die first, leauing issue

*Reignold*  
Earle of *Gelders*,  
married  
*Mary* daughter  
to *Bertold*  
of *Machline*.

by the Earle, that then her children should be admitted to their fathers inheritance, and not be debarred of their fortune, though he should afterward marry a woman of more honourable birth, and have issue by her also. These conditions being accepted, *Marie* the daughter of *Bertold* was married to the Earle of *Gelders*, and the fourth yeere after deceased, leauing issue by her husband one daughter named *Isabell*. After her decease the Earle married againe, *Isabell* sister to that most worthy & prudent Prince, *Edward* King of *England*, by whom he had two sonnes, *Reignold* and *Edward*, and one daughter called *Ioane*. It fortun'd both the *Reignolds*, as wel the father as the son, deceased: *Edward* tooke to wife a daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Bauier*, and afterwards in a battell against *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Braband*, was wounded to death, and departed without issue. *Ioane* therefore after the death of her brothers, presumed the inheritance should be hers; but *Isabell* which was descended of the first marriage, maintained the contrary, affirming that her selfe only had rightfull interest in the succession. This *Isabell* was ioynd in marriage to *Iohn* of *Bloys*, who had much alteration with his aduersaries about the inheritance, and great contention was like to haue growne betweene them, so farre forth as the matter had surely come to tryall of the sword, but that by his wiues departure in the mean season, the controuersie was decided. Then *Ioane* which was now the onely and vndoubted heyre of her father, being married to *William* Marques of *Iuliers*, bare to him a son called after his fathers name, *William*. This *William* made Duke of *Gelders* in the right of his mother, tooke to wife the daughter of *Albert* Duke of *Bauer*, the same which had beene formerly espoused to *Edward* of *Gelders* his vncle, but by reason of her tender yeeres, remaining still a mayden widdowe. *Reignold* Earle of *Gelders* which married the king of *Englands* sister, in regard of his great league and allyance with King *Edward*, was highly fauoured

red

red by *Lewis* of *Banier* then Emperour, in so much that he aduanced both him and the Marquessie of *Iuliers* to a higher degree of honour, and created them both Dukes. Now the occasion why this *William* the young Duke of *Gelders* made defiance to the French King, was both because he bare good affection to the king of *Engand*, to who he was alyed be faith and homage, and also for that *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Braband*, whom he exceedingly hated, was confederate with the French men. The cause of his hatred against the Duke of *Braband* was this. *Reignold* which married first *Mary* of *Machline*, and afterward king *Edwards* sister, being a man beyond all measure prodigall, morgaged three Castles to the Earle of *Morse*, a rich Lord in *Germany*, for a great sum of money. The Earle a long while after, seeing his debter vnable to redeeme his pledge, foldeth the castles to *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Braband*. After the death of *Reignold*, *Edward* his sonne addresssing letters to *Wenceslaus*, requested to haue the Castles againe and he would repay him all the money that he had disbursed. Which when *Wenceslaus* absolutely refused, preparation was made for warres, which doubtles should haue bene the conclusion, but that by intreatie of the Duke of *Iuliers*, and *Albert* of *Banier*, the matter for that time was compounded. The same yeere *Charles* the Emperour appointed his brother *Wenceslaus* as publik pro-  
Langue fride.  
 tectour of the high waies, for the punishment of theeuers and robbers, that people might passe quietly from one place to another. Now it fortuneth that certaine merchants of *Flanders* and *Braband*, as they trauelled about their affaires into *Germany* were robbed of their money & spoyled of all their goods in the country of *Iuliers*, through which they made their iourney. It was reported, that the offenders were receiued and fostered by the Duke of *Iuliers*, who (as many more besides himselfe) was thought to repine at the giuing off so great an honour to Duke *Wenceslaus*. The poore merchants that sustained the losse,



*Wenceslaus*  
Duke of *Brabant* taken pri-  
soner.  
*Edward* Duke  
of *Gelders*  
slaine in bat-  
tell.

made grievous complaint to him which had the charge of redressing such enormities : who thereupon directing friendly letters to the Duke of *Iuliers*, preuailed so little, that he might plainly perceiue, he rather desired warre, then peace. *Wenceslaus* therefore least the suffering of such disorders to escape unpunished, should bring the authority of his office in contempt, leuyed an army. The Duke of *Iuliers* did the like, & was ayded by *Edward* Duke of *G. lders*. The battell was fought in *Iuliers* with great fiercenesse on both sides : but the *Brabanders* were discōfited and put to flight, and amongst others the Duke himselfe also taken prisoner. *Edward* Duke of *Gelders* was likewise mortally wounded, and dyed of the same. When the Dutchesse of *Brabant* heard tidings of her husbands captivity, by aduise of the French King she resorted to the Emperour at *Confluence* : who vpon her complaint being moued with his brothers misfortune, prepared sharp warres against the Duke of *Iuliers*, intending to haue made a notable spoile and destruction of his country, had he not bene pacified by the Princes electors, who thought it would be an ill president, that a fellowe of the Empire should be so oppressed. The Duke therefore being by their meanes brought before the Emperours presence, when he had voluntarily discharged his prisoner, after sharpe reprehension, he was againe reconciled and restored to the Emperours fauour. Within fewe yeeres after, dyed *Wenceslaus* Duke of *Brabant*, then *William* the Duke of *Iuliers* sonne, holding the seigniory of *Gelders* in right of his mother, claymed againe from the dutchesse of *Brabant* these Castles which his vnckle *Edward* in his life time had challenged before. The restitution wherof being denied, ministred newe occasion whereby the olde grudge was againe reuiued. And because *Brabant* at that time was in league with *Fraunce*, and the Duke of *Burgoine* the French kings brother, was next heyre to the widdowe; the Duke of *Gelders* ( who studied all the dis-  
pleasure

pleasure he could against the house of *Fraunce*) to the intent to shewe his loue towards the English nation, passed ouer the seas, and contracted great alliance with King *Richard*, receiuing from him a pension of foure thousand franks, as hath bene before declared, and afterward at his returne, defied the French king, and professed open enmitie against the *Brabanders*: in so much that the Duke of *Burgoigne* vppon aduertisement from the widdowe, of his daily incursions, was constrained to send thither certaine companies of horsemen, for defence of the frontiers.

Mention is made before of the Duke of *Lancaster*, who by reason of great plague and mortality in his army, was forced to discharge his soldiers and returne to the king of *Portingale*. Now when the Spanyards and French men sawe their enemies disperied, they easily recouered all that was lost, the Englishmen which remained in garrisons being either expelled by force, or dismissed by composition. The king of *Portugall* perswaded his father in lawe to send for a new supply out of *England*. But the Duke considering how it was farre of, and that the state of *England* was at that time greatly encombred, made speedy prouision for his departure, and sayled (as we haue shewed you) to *Bayon*: from whence he wrote diuerse letters both to the King, and to his brothers for succour. But the Englishmens minds were so alienated from the wars of *Portingall*, by reason of the great miseries they endured there, that scarce any man could be found which would enter his name to goe vppon that voyage. Besides this, the troubles, seditions, and executions which had bene lately in the realme before, remayned still so fresh in euery mans memory, as they had no leysure to intend to forreine affaires. The French king vnderstanding how the world went in *England*, to the intent to make vse of his aduersaries ill fortune, vpon great hopes and large promises, allured the Duke of *Ireland* out of the Netherlands.

The Spanyards recouer againe all that the Duke of *Lancaster* had gotten in *Castile*.

lands into *Fraunce*.

*Charles King  
of Navarre,  
by a strange  
misfortune  
burned in his  
bed.*

*Charles* king of *Navarre* about this time selling his people at a subsidy of two hundred thousand franks, assembled the burgesles of his townes at *Pampelone* the chiefe Citie of his kingdome: and when he saw that they stucke vpon the matter, he shut them vp in a certaine court enclosed about with high walles, threatning that if they concluded not the sooner, he would handle them according to their deserts. But in the meane while happened a wonderfull accident. After he had left them in this angry moode, he gaue himselfe to sleepe: and because he was aged, his seruants were accustomed to burne a perfume about him, to prouoke him to swear. Now it fortun'd (by what negligence or mischaunce at that time I know not) that some sparke of fire caught hold of the bed; which by little and little encreasing and gathering strength, at last brake forth in a burning flame about him: by means whereof the wretched king being alone and not able by reason of his age to helpe himselfe, nor to winde out of the linnen which entangled him, was almost consumed in the flames before any could come to his rescue.

Many Lords of *Fraunce* which were much displeased that the Duke of *Gelders* had made defiance to their king in such proud termes, contrary to the custome of other Princes, were of opinion, that if he should escape cleere-ly away withall, it might perhaps hereafter be imputed as a bame and reproch to them which were now of the kings counsell. The king was forward enough to haue taken a course of reuenge, but in regard the Duke of *Britaine* attempted new troubles, soliciting the English to be partakers of his proceedings, the enterprise which both himselfe and many other desired, could not then be performed. The Duke of *Berry* sent one priuately in his owne name, to deale with the Duke of *Britaine* in friendly manner, to drawe him to some reasonable agreement: but it was in vaine, and that made the French men in greater feare



feare and suspition . For they considered what perill it might be to the realme, if the King as he desired him selfe, and was perswaded by others, should now addresse him selfe into *Germany*, when the Duke of *Britaine* shewed so small affection to peace as he seemd altogether desirous of warre, attending but for opportunity to discover his intention. When they had long varied in opinions, some thinking such indignity was in no wise to be taken at so meane a Lords hands as the Duke of *Gelders*, & that the King now in his youth was to be enured to armes; others opposing against this counsell, the present state of the kingdome, the charge of the warres, and the fiercenesse of the Germanes : at length it was agreed, to condemne the Duke of *Gelders* as a young man, whom rather heate of youth, then any aduised iudgement had moued to that action : and if he proceeded to make warres as he had threatned, that then it should be more honour for the king to aduance his forces against him. But by all means it was thought necessarie to fall to agreement with the Duke of *Britaine*. For he (as we said before) seemed openly to practise with the King of *England*, and already certaine English ships scowred the Seas betweene *Normandy* and *Britaine*; which notwithstanding they did no harme to *Fraunce*, yet because they still hovered about that coast, the French men alwaies mistrusted the worst. For these causes many thought it the fittest course by warr to chastize the Dukes presumption. But the Kings Vncles and some others of sadder discretion, who alwaies held the successe of warre vncertaine, were of a contrary opinion. For it was easie to coniecture, that the warres with *England* would be renewed vpon this occasion, which was the onely thing that the Duke of *Britaine* desired. Commissioners were therefore directed vnto him to make a peaceable conclusion of the matter. Whereof the Duke beeing informed, before their comming, consulted of his affaires at large. His counsell with weigh-

• The Duke of  
*Britaine* re-  
storeth all  
that he had  
taken from  
the Consta-  
ble.

ty reasons perswaded him, that hee should desist from his course, and restrayning his affections, submitte himselfe to the French King, whose puissance was such, as hee had restored great Lords, yea, and Princes, to their honour and estates, and had driuen others againe to whome he bare displeasure, out of their seigniories and dominions. Therefore their best aduise was, that he should of his owne accord, restore againe to the Constable the castles which he had lately taken from him. For it would be more honourable for him to deliuer them now willingly, then hereafter by compulsion. The Duke following their counsell, made restitution of all, and besides, put euery officer in his place againe, as he found them when he first seized the castles into his possession. The same hereof being presently spread into *Fraunce*, met the commissioners also vpon the confines of *Britaine*. Who when they came before the Duke, because of his owne accord, he had already performed that which otherwise they should haue requested at his handes, they proceeded to the other part of their commission, which was, to require him, that at a day prefixed he would repaire to the towne of *Bloys* vppon the riuer *Loire*, there to meete and conferre with the Kings vn- cles. The Duke condescended, and being come thither accordingly, they exhorted and entreated him, that for assurance and confirmation of peace, he would speake with the King himselfe, and doe homage vnto him as all others had done, he only excepted. The Duke as one that was not ignorant how great enemies he had about the King, namely the Constable, and *John* his Son lately set free out of *England*, discreetly and earnestly excused himselfe. Neuertheles after the Kings vn- cles had made him faithfull promise that he should both goe and returne in safety, without any offence or interruption, he was contented at length to beare them company to *Paris*.

When the Duke of *Lancaster* had sent many letters from *Bayon* into *England* for succours, and could not preuaile, se-  
ing

ing all mens affections generally enstranged from the voi-  
age of *Spaine*, it was a mighty greefe and corrosiue to his  
heart, considering with himselfe how strong and well furni-  
shed an army he had brought forth against his enemy,  
through the puissance whereof, he had conquered no small  
number of townes and fortresses : and afterward how cru-  
elly fortune had dealt with him and his, ouerthrowing the  
whole course of his proceedings in such sort, as he sawe no  
possible meanes left, how euer to obtaine his inheritance of  
the kingdōe of *Castile*. In musing vpon this his misfortune,  
he compared it to that calamity which the Duke of *Aniow*  
suffered in *Calabria*, who being come into *Italy* vpon large  
hopes and great expectation, not only fayled of the endes  
whereto he aspired, but spent his life also in the pursute of  
his enterprise. This only was a comfort to him in all his  
discouragements, that he had a daughter by his wife *Con-*  
*stance*, whome he thought some French Lord of high estate,  
eyther in respect of her birth or possibility, would desire to  
haue in marriage. Now the Duke of *Berry* was at the same  
time a widdower, and his freinds now and then discoursing  
with him about a wife, amongst others mentioned also the  
Duke of *Lancasters* daughter. The Duke presently began  
to conceiue some good affection that way, and therevpon  
aduertised the Duke of *Lancaster* of his intent : whome  
when he had found nothing strange in the matter, he sent  
Cōmissioners againe to negotiate with him further in that  
behalf. The Duke of *Lancaster* in the meane time, politick-  
ly disperfed the same hereof into all countries far and neere,  
by sending to his freinds instructed for the purpose, both  
the copies of his owne and the Duke of *Berries* letters : for  
he was well assured that these tydings would mervailously  
trouble and disquiet the King of *Spaine*. Who indeed as-  
soone as he heard of the matter, began to enter into a deepe  
consideration with himselfe, how great inconuenience  
might redound vnto him by this marriage, namely, that  
peace being established between *England* and *Fraunce*, both



those nations vnitng their forces together, would make warres vppon *Spaine*, and so conuey the possession of the crowne to the Duke of *Lancasters* wife. Wherefore, vpon aduise with his counsell, it was thought good to make a secret motion, that the Duke of *Lancasters* daughter might be giuen in marriage to *Henrie* his sonne, whome hee had by the King of *Arragons* daughter. Herevpon a few were sent, and those slenderly accompanied, least the French men by whose freindship he possessed his kingdome, should come to any knowledge of the businesse intended. The Duke gae good care to their message. And yet he put the French commissioners still in great hope, euer making this exception, that he would go through with nothing without the consent and approbation of the King of *England* his nephew, to whome he had wholly referred the conclusion of these matters: and with this answer he dismissed them. But he carryed himselfe much more familiarly towards the Spaniards, through his wiues procurement, who sawe by this meanes, that her daughter without any empeachment or difficulty, should orderly succeed in the inheritance of that flourishing kingdome, for the obtayning whereof so many trauailes and painefull aduentures had been sustained by her husband.

*Grane* besieged by the  
Brabanders.

The hatred kindled euery day more and more, betweene the *Brabanders* and *Gelders*; and the *Brabanders* assembling about fortie thousand men, besieged *Grane* a towne neere adioyning to the riuer *Maze*. The duke of *Gelders* lying the same time at *Nymmeghen*, because he had great confidence both in the townsemen and the Garrison left at *Grane*, did not greatly passe for that siege. Neuertheless he required ayde of the King of *England*, for so it was conditioned between them when he made his defiance to the French King. But the state of *England* was so intangled with ciuill dissention, and troubled with expectation of wars out of *Scotland*, that no ayd could be obtayned from thence. And the *Brabanders* seeing they wasted their time in

in vaine, sent some tenne thousand of their men abroad to harry their enemies countrey. The Duke of *Gelders* being certified thereof, gathered together about three hundred horsemen, and contrary to the perswasions of almost all his Counsell, with that small company marched towardes his enemy with great courage: esteeming it better to die fighting manfully in the field, than to be shut vp within the walles of a towne, and besieged. Therefore when hee had put his men in array, hee exhorted them to knightly prowesse and valiant demeanour, giuing so great encouragement by example of his owne resolution, that setting spurres to their horses, they all in one troupe ranne furiously vpon their enemies, preuenting their expectation with such a desperat charge before they could settle themselves to any orderly resistance, that they easily ouercame them, and with small losse obtained an honorable victorie. Many perished, some slaine in fight, others drowned in the riuer *Maze*: such as escaped, fled with all the speede they could make, and carried tidings of their ouerthrowe to the campe before *Graue*. Whereupon so great terrour rose presently amongst them, that without further delay they abandoned the siege, and for haste left all their prouision and baggage behinde them.

The French king being exceedingly desirous to take reuengement of the Duke of *Gelders* for those arrogant and reprochfull Letters he had sent him, raised a mighty armie. Many dissuaded him from this voiage, and among the rest, his vncles; but because the duke of *Brittaine* was now fully concluded withall, insomuch that he had repayd the money also that he had taken from the Constable, the King would not by any meanes omit the present occasion of accomplishing his purpose. And first he sent ambassadors to the emperour to acquaint him with the causes of this warre: for so it behooued him, in regard of certaine couenants and articles made formerly betwixt the Emperour and him. It was thought best to passe the army through *Braband*; and the

The notable  
victory of the  
Duke of *Gelders*  
against  
the *Brabanters*.

1388.

Dutchesse her selfe was well contented it should be so; but all the people besides, stood stowly against it, and were readie to defend their frontiers from admitting such a multitude, as being once receiued, would doe no lesse harme and annoyance to the country, than if their enemies should waste and spoile it. Moreouer, they threatned the Dutchesse, that if she gratified the Frenchmen in this behalfe, they would neuer take armes against the duke of *Gelders*. Then she aduisedly excused her selfe to the King, imputing the blame to her people, and beseeching him not to take anie offence at her deniall. Therefore taking his journey through *Champaigne*, hee sent three thousand before to make way through the Forrest of *Ardenne*, which otherwise he could not haue passed. Moreouer he sent vnto the Emperour, a coppie of the Letter which the duke of *Gelders* would haue had carried into *France* when he made his defiance. When the Emperour had seene that despightful and vnreuerent manner of writing, he gaue answer to the ambassadors in such sort as might wel assure thē he would be no hindrance to the Frenchmens proceedings. Who he- wing their passage through the Forrest of *Arden*, entred into the territorie of *Lutsemburge*; and when they approched neere the country of *Liege*, the Bishoppe (whose name was *Arnold*, of the house of the Earles of *Horne*) moued by the Archbishop of *Colen*, made intercession to the King for the duke of *Iuliers*, whose seigniory was like to be the first that should haue tasted the violence of that warre. The King was not much against his request, so the duke himselfe would come and shew how the matters which he alleaged for his excuse, were iust and reasonable. The duke being brought to the Kings presence, protested that hee neither counselled his sonne to make that defiance, nor had anie knowledge thereof before the letters were sent. And for confirmation of his innocencie in this case, promised that hee would perswade with his sonne, to make his purgation aduisedly before the King, and desire him of pardon: which

The French  
king goeth a-  
gainst the  
Duke of *Gel-  
ders*.



which thing if hee could not effect, hee would set open all his townes to the King, that by meanes thereof hee might accomplish his warres with more aduantage. This condition was accepted, and the rather by the duke of *Burgoigns* perswasion. The duke of *Juliers* therefore accompanied with the Archbishop of *Collen*, resorted to his sonne, and ye will not belecue what trauell and endeouour hee vsed to alter his obstinate minde. For all his discourse sauoured of nothing but meere fiercenesse and contempt of the King, whose puissance he perswaded himselfe, that he should be able to withstand through the helpe of the English. At length after many rebukes and sharp threatnings, with milde speeches and gentle intreaties now and then intermingled betweene, being forced as it were by assault, hee condescended to his father. Then the duke drew him a forme of excuse to this effect; that whatsoeuer hee had doone in this matter, was by counsell and procurement of the King of *England*. When the French King had seene the duke of *Gelders*, and heard what hee had spoken for himselfe, his minde seemed to relent with a singular kinde of affection: for hee not onely pardoned his fault, but from thenceforth beganne to loue him, and that much more earnestly, than if he had neuer offended him.

The Duke of *Gelders* submits himselfe to the French king.

When the Scottish men vnderstoode that discord was hatching in *England*, and by continuance of time had gathered greater strength, being daily more and more augmented, to the intent to reuenge olde iniuries, without acquainting the King with their purpose, they assembled to the number of fortie thousand men. They thought likewise to haue concealed it from their enemies by a pollicie, but they were deceiued. For the English hauing intelligence thereof, made preparation to withstand them. It came to a pitched field, and neuer was battell fought with greater force betweene them. The Scottish army being diuided in two partes, came not with equall puissance to the encounter, because they were separated one farre from another: neuer the-

The Scottes inuade *England*.

neuertheless they went away with victory.

The Duke of  
*Gelders* taken  
prisoner.

After the French mens departure, the Duke of *Gelders* being one that tooke no pleasure in ease and idlenesse, rayfed certaine forces and tooke his journey towards *Prussia*. It happened, that as he passed through *Germany*, hee was taken prisoner. But the Lordes of *Prussia* rescued him againe by force, and caused the party which had taken him, to fie for his owne safety, lest hee should have fallen into the like misfortune himselfe. Now although he were set free by the helpe of his friends, and as hee lost his libertie by the lawe of Armes, so hee had recouered it by the same meanes againe: yet bicause he would keepe faith with his enemy, he came at a certaine time to a place appointed, and compounded for his ranfome.

The Duke of *Lancaster* (as we shewed before) kept the duke of *Berry* still a suter in great expectation, and yet he was all the while more affected to the Spaniard. Amongst other doubts which he cast, this was one: that if the Duke of *Berry* should fortune to die, his daughter should then remaine but a poore Lady in respect of her other sisters, for the duke had children by his first wife, which doubtlesse would goe away with the greatest part of his estate. When the French King vnderstoode how the King of *Spaine* had put in a barre against the duke of *Berries* proceedings, hee was wonderfully offended; so was the whole Counsell of *France*, who knew well how highly *Spaine* was bound to the Kings of *France* for great benefites receiued many ages together. For by the ayde of *Charles* the fift, *Henry* the bastard being set in possession of the kingdome, left the same after his decease, to his sonne *Iohn* now raigning: yet not in such sort that he was able to defend it against the English men and their confederates the *Portingales*, if hee had not beene vpholden by the succour of the French men.

This ingratitude therefore being generally taken in very ill part, Ambassadors were addressed to the King of *Spaine* with this message. That he should take good aduisement and

and consider well with himselfe, what hee did, and with whome he contracted freindship : fieldome any marriages were made, but there passed leagues and confederacies betweene the parties. There were yet extant counterpanes of the allyance between *Henrie* his father, and his posterity on the one part, and the Kings of *Fraunce* on the others: Against the covenants whereof it were not good to transgresse : if he did, that he should thinke no wronge done him by the French King in forsaking his freindship, which notwithstanding was the thing that he studied by all possible meanes to preserve and continue. The King of *Spaine* answered, that indeed there had beene debating of certaine matters in his name with the duke of *Lancaster*, but it should be in no wise preiudiciall to the state of *Fraunce* ; and that he would neuer attempt any action, whereby in the least degree he might seeme to haue broken the bondes of freindship and alliance between them. Assoone as he had dismissed the ambassadours with this answer, immedi-  
 atly after he went through with the marriage, and therevpon the Lady *Constance* to put the matter out of question, conveyed *Katherine* her daughter into *Spaine*, and there married her to *Henrie* the yong Prince of *Castile*. Which done, shee made diligent serch for her fathers bones, and when the place of his buriall at length was discovered, she caused them to be taken vp, and honourably entumbed againe at *Smill*.

*Katherine* the Duke of *Lancaster*'s daughter, married to *Henry* Prince of *Castile*.

Through the trauell and industrie of certaine well disposed persons, communication was had concerning a truce betweene the Kings of *England* and *Fraunce*, with their confederates, viz. *Spaine*, *Portugall*, and *Scotland*. Now because the Scottes lately before had some good successe against the English, there was much adoe to draw them to any agreement : neuertheles their King being well inclined to quietnes, in the end they also changed their copie. So a truce was concluded for three yeeres, in such sort, that whosocuer should by any meanes infringe it, should be ac-

Truce for three yeeres between *England*, *Fraunce*, & their confederates.

A a

counted



counted, as a wicked and periured person.

We haue spoken before of the Duke of *Ireland*, who being driuen out of *England*, and lately through faire promises allured out of the low countries into *Fraunce*, remained there a while, but could not purchase any settled abode or continuall resting place. For the Lord *Cowcy* a man of great authority about the French King, vppon iust and weighty occasions, hated him extreemely. For the Duke of *Ireland* hauing taken to wife this Lord *Cowcyes* daughter, fell afterwards in loue with an other woman, and by dispensation from Pope *Urbane*, who was ready by all meanes to pleasure the King of *England*, diuorced his wife and marryed his paramour. The Lord *Cowcy* therefore, father of the wronged Lady, being deeply moued with such dishonourable iniury, would neuer be in quiet, till he had bayted out of *Fraunce* this man, whome the world charged with more crimes, then that alone. See here the ebbing and flowing of humain estates, the affections of Princes, and the ends of wicked persons.

The French King was perswaded by some about him, to make a progresse into the furthest partes of his kingdome, as a thing so acceptable to the people, as nothing could be more effectually to winne their hartes. So he tooke his iourney through *Campaigne*, *Burgoigne*, and other prouinces till he came to *Avinion*: and when he had visited the Pope, went from thence to *Mountpelyer*. Which City although by reason of traficke and merchandize it be very wealthy, yet it had been so oppressed with tributes and exactions, that as then it was much impouerished. For as long as king *Charles* the first liued, the duke of *Aniow* had the rule of all those countries, to the great enriching of his owne cofers. And at such time as in pursute of greater fortunes, he vndertook his voyage towards *Naples*, by consent of the Peeres the duke of *Berry* succeeded in his gouernment. But as soone as the king came to one and twenty yeares of age, he displaced his vncles from their authority, and tooke the administration

stration of their offices into his owne hands. Now when he came into *Prouince* and the places adioyning, many grieuous complaints were preferred against his vncl of *Berry*, who had beyond measure polled the poore commons of their goods, and brought them in a manner to extreame desperation. Yee might daily haue seene great numbers of suters putting vp petitions and supplications, complaining of deceyt, iniury, violence, rapes, extortions, and proscriptions. It greiued the King exceedingly to see the miseries of his people, and therefore for an example to terrify others, he caused the Duke of *Berries* treasurer, the cheifest man in those quarters, to be burned; for there came many accusations against him, of great wrong and oppression which he had done in the country. The Duke of *Berry* by his letters made earnest intercession to saue his life, but he could not preuaile. When the King vndertooke this journey, he would in no wise be accompanied by his vnclcs, wherewith they were greatly offended, but especially because they sawe some others of meane estate, to growe in great reputation about him.

The Duke of  
*Berries* trea-  
surer burned.

About this time departed Pope *Vrbane* out of this life, whereof *Clement* being certified within ten dayes after, at *Avinion*, he earnestly commended his cause to the French King, desiring him that now vpon this occasion he would vse his credit with the Emperour, the King of *Hungary*, and other Princes, to the intent that all discord being remooued, peace and quietnesse might at length be established in the church. He was in good hope that now when his aduersary was dead, the supremacy would entirely haue falne to him. But he was farre deceiued; for the Cardinales created *Boniface* of *Naples*.

The death of  
Pope *Vrbane*.

The Moores and Barbarians made often excursions vpon the *Genowaes*, and the Citties and Ilands vnder their subiection. Which thing they might more commodiously doe, because vpon the confines, comming from *Genoa*

towards their country, they held a very strong and defensible towne called *Affricke*. Out of this towne they issue forth against their enemies by sea with great ease and advantage, and if need require, they haue recourse againe into the same, as a most safe harbor & receptacle. The *Genoways* therefore enforced through the complaints & entreaty of their freinds, began to consider how they might worke redresse. And because they vnderstood there was a truce lately concluded between *Fraunce*, *England*, and the kingdomes confederate, they sent ambassadours to the French King, requiring him of succour. The King was so inclinable to this warre, that he not only vndertooke it himselfe, but solicited diuers of his neighbour Princes, to set their helping hands to performance of the enterprise. Therefore assembling no small power out of *Fraunce*, *Britaine*, *Artoys*, *Flanders*, and *England*, he sent it into *Lombardy*, vnder the conduct of *Lewis* Duke of *Burbon*, with whome he ioyned in commission the Lord *Cowcy*, a man of most knowledge and experience, and in greatest iudgement and direction in military affaires, that liued in those times. These taking shipping together at *Genoa*, at length ouercame the contrary waues and tempests which encountered them at sea, and arriued safely in their enemies country. Now as the Moores were consulting, because they saw that the *Genoways* vppon this redoubling of their puissance, by the coming of the french and other forraine nations to their ayde, would besiege their Citty; a certaine graue old man amongst them, descended of a noble family, gaue counsell in this manner. That they should not giue battell to their enemies, in regard of their great number; but rather suffer them quietly to encampe and settle themselves before the Citty; for it was strong ynough to abide the violence of their siege for a long season. Therefore let their enemies roast themselves abroad in the heare of the scorching sunne beames, whilst they being fenced from the iniury of the weather, with houses and shadowy places, rested

1390.

The French King aydeth the Genoways against the Moores and Barbarians.



rested at their ease within the Citty. For it would come to passe, that when their prouision by little and little was consumed, themselves tormented with heate, and tyred with a thousand other discommodities, they would get home againe without speeding of their purpose. The olde mans counsell was well liked, and the citty being besieged both by sea and land, many light skirmishes were daily interchanged. The *Barbarians* sent an Ambassador desiring to knowe for what causes this warre was mouued against them. The French men made answer, that the chiefe reason was, because their forefathers had put the Saujour of the world to a shameful death, for that they excluded baptisme, were blasphemers of God, and spake vnreuerently of the holy Virgine mother of Christ: these were the occasions why they bent their forces against them, as the common enemies of christendome. This answer seemed but a mockery to the *Moores*, so farre were they from any thoght of misliking their religion. The *Sicillians* and other countries neere adioyning brought corne, wine and other prouision abundantly into the campe of the besiegers. But by reason of the hotenesse of those countrey wines, and the extreame intemperatenesse of the ayre, it could not be otherwise but that very many fell into most dangerous diseases. Amongst these inconueniences the duke of *Burbon* now altogether out of season beeing haughty, prowde and cruell, and such a one as no man almost might presume into his presence, would remitte no parte of his seueritie: insomuch that through his default, shewing himselfe alwaies rough and intractable, many notable exploits were omitted. After two moneths siege, when they had bestowed all their labour in vaine, viraile waxing scant, and scarcitie being feared, because the winter approached and their watching grew painefull (for the *Barbarians* did continually molest them in the night) the pestilence being also mistrusted to hang ouer their heads, most were of opinion, that the best course was, to dissolue the army. This also was

another thing which they suspected, that the *Genoways* perhaps might fall to agreement with their enemies, and ther was already such a rumor spread through al the camp. Vpon these considerations therefore the French men ray- sing their siege (which greatly displeed the *Genowais*) ad- dressed themselves homeward. Whereupon the *Barbarians* resuming greater courage, began to conceiue large hopes and to promise themselves the performance of great mat- ters heereafter. And that they might be able to repulse their enemies with greater force another time, they ioy- ned in league with the Princes that bordered about them.

The death of  
John king of  
Castile.

*John* king of *Spaine*, within two yeares after his sonne had married the duke of *Lancasters* daughter, departed this life, leauing the succession of the Crowne to *Henry* his sonne. Moreouer at such time as the marriage was concluded, this also was one couenant betwixt them: That the King of *Spaine* should yearly pay to the Duke of *Lancaster* and his wife, a hundred thousand crownes, and for assurance ther- of, should deliuer as pledges, foure of the chiefe Earles of his kingdom.

*Galeas* duke of *Millaine* surprized his vncl *Barnabas* by treason, and put him to death. The sonne of this *Barnabas* tooke to wife the Earle of *Arminackes* sifter. And *Lewis* duke of *Orleance* brother to King *Charles* the sixt, had ma- ried *Valentine* the daughter of *Galeas*.

The Earle of  
*Arminacke*  
passeth into  
*Italy* against  
the Duke of  
*Millaine*.

Now the Earle of *Arminacke* vpon the incessant importunity of his sifter, as- sembled an army of the companions in *France*, and lead- ing them into *Italy*, layd siege to *Alexandria*, a towne per- taining to the Dutchy of *Millaine*. *Galeas*, who sojourned the same time at *Pauy*, sent thither fise hundred horsemen to lie therein in garrison: for his enemies were not then of so great number, that they could enuiron the towne round a- bout. The Captaine of those horsemen being a skilfull man of armes, after he had laine a while at *Alexandria*, issued forth one day with 300. horse to draw his enemies to some disaduantage: for he knew well they would proffer some

skir-

skirmish to the townes-men. Therfore at his going out he gaue commandement, that in their fight they should retire from the enemy, and suffer him to pursue them, till they had drawne him within compasse of their danger. He was nothing deceiued in his opinion: for as they were skirmishing after their ordinary maner, the townesmen gaue backe till they came to the place where their fellowes lay in ambush, who incontinently brake forth with great violence. The French men thus vnexpectedly engaged, behaued themselues with great courage and valour: but being ouerweariied with trauell, and faint with heate of the Sunne, they were vnable to sustaine the reviewed force and fury of their enemies. The Earle himselfe hauing gotten out of the preasse to take ayre, found a brooke there by, whereof he drunke so abundantly, that he was sodainely taken with such a sicknesse, as both presently bereft him of his speech, and within few houres after, of his life. His souldiers by this means discouraged, made as much haste as they could to get themselues out of *Italy*. But many of them being intercepted & slaine in their passage, the rest when they came to the confines of *Fraunce*, were by the Kings commaundement prohibited to enter.

The Duke of *Britaine*, who had lately beene at *Paris*, and done his homage according to the custome, being vnable to change the disposition of his nature, though he had bin oftentimes reconciled to the French King, yet in his heart he could not choose but hate him, and loue the King of *England*. At such time as this attonement was made at *Paris*, hee promised from thencefoorth to become a Clementine. But assoone as hee was returned into his owne countrey, hee performed nothing lesse. And when the Kings Officers were sent vnto him, hee would not adaijt them to his presence: carying himselfe altogether in such a fashion, as it might plainly appeare hee sought new occasions of warre and contention. Many counselled the King to leuie armies against him, to abate his pride and arrogancie, which



was intollerable. But the Kings vncles, and especially the Duke of *Burgoigne* ( whose wife was the Duke of *Britaines* kinswoman) employed their trauell to this effect, that a day certaine might be assigned for communication. So a meeting was had at *Tours* : and certaine pointes were there rehearsed, wherein the Duke might seeme to haue contemned the kings authority. The Duke answered respectiuely to euery of them, and sharply enough, glauncing couertly somtimes at certaine persons of base linage in the Court, vpon whose counsell and opinions the King much depended. Such difference and alteration was about the matter, that it seemed not likely to be otherwise ended, than by the sword. Neuerthelesse, in conclusion a meanes was found to make amity and peace betweene them. The French king gaue his daughter in marriage to the Duke of *Brittaines* sonne : and the sonne of *John* of *Blois* ( the Constables son in lawe) married the Duke of *Britaines* daughter. Verily, for the most part, to such comicall conclusions, come the tragicall contentions of Princes.

Guy Earle  
of *Blois*.

*Guy* Earle of *Blois* had rich and ample inheritance, both in *Fraunce* and other countries. But after the death of *Le-mis* his sonne, who deceased very yong, he had no one certaine heire, but diuerse in diuerse places, according as his lands lay separated one farre from another. Now the duke of *Touaine* the French kings brother, by the meanes of his wife which was daughter to *Galas* Duke of *Millaine*, had a great masse of money lying by him. And because he was desirous to bestow it to some benefite, he would neuer rest till he had perswaded the Earle to sell him al the lands pertaining to the Earledome of *Blois*. It was a hard matter to compasse, and good reason why: but being ouercome at last by the intreaty of his wife, the Duke of *Berryes* daughter (whom the French king had suborned) when he saw no hope of issue, he solde him the reuerfion of his Earledome for two hundred thousand franks.

*Gascone* Earle of *Foys*, whose singular wisedome and liberality

berality my Author dooth oftentimes commend, fell so-  
dainly downe dead one day when he was come homie from  
hunting, as he washed his hands to go to dinner. By what  
mischaunce his onely sonne perished, we haue shewed be-  
fore. Now of his base sonnes he loued one so well, that he  
was earnestly in hand with the French King for his legitti-  
mation, that he might haue made him his heyre : and if  
suddaine death had not preuented him, perhaps he might  
haue brought the matter to passe as he desired. The next of  
his kintred to succeed him was the vicount of *Chastillon*, but  
as long as he liued, he alwaies hated him, & to the intent to  
doe him displeasure, besides his purpose and endeaour to  
haue conueyed the inheritance to his bastard sonne, he also  
borrowed of the French King (when he had no need) fife  
hundred thousand frankes, because if euer he happened to  
become his heyre, he would be sure to charge him with a  
heauy burthen. Assoone as the Earle was dead, there  
wanted not some to perswade the King, that in regard he  
deceased without issue, and was indebted to him so great a  
summe of money, he should seize all the Earldome into his  
owne possession. After the matter had been diuersly deba-  
ted, at length by inter cession of the Duke of *Berry*, the  
King was contented to depart with the Earldome to the  
Vicount, vpon these conditions : that he should pay vnto  
him threescore thousand frankes, and twenty thousand  
more to such as had trauelled and taken paines in his be-  
halfe for the obtainment of his sute ; and finally, that  
by the censure of indifferēt persons, he should deale friend-  
ly and honourably with the Earles two bastard Sonnes that  
remayned.

The suddaine  
death of Gas-  
cone Earle of  
Foys.

After the French men were returned out of *Barbary*, vp-  
pon relation which many made of the occurrents they had  
seene, the King was enflamed with a meruailous desire to  
goe into those countries to conquer the Barbarians : and  
there were diuers that prouoked and put him forward to  
the action, as an enterprise fitting a Prince of such puis-  
sance.

fance. But it was generally thought necessary, that the church should first be settled in quiet, before this expedition were undertaken. And that could not otherwise be brought to passe, then by suppressing the new Pope lately chosen at *Rome*. This counsell was well approoved, and therevpon proclamation made through all *Fraunce*, that the King would addresse himselfe to the warres, at the beginning of the next spring. Now when this voyage was thus fully resolved vpon, ambassadours arrayued out of *England*, signifying how their King was very desirous of peace. This newes wonderfully reioyced the French King, and therevpon a meeting was appointed at *Amience*. The King of *England* sent thither two of his vnckles the Dukes of *Lancaster*, and *Torke*, but the Duke of *Gloucester* the great aduersary of peace, he kept still with himselfe at *Douer*. The french King was present in person at this treaty. The Englishmen demanded againe all *Aquitaine*, which King *John* had departed from by the law of armes: and besides, fourteene hundred thousand frankes which remayned yet vn timer paid for his raunsome. The French men offered them a part of *Aquitaine*, namely, that they had already in possession, and nyne Bishoprickes. For the payment of their money they required three yeares respite, and that *Calice* might be raced to the ground.

1391.  
A treaty of  
peace at *Amience*.

The conditions were reiected on both sides. For although the Englishmen enclined wonderfully to peace, yet without their kings consent, they would not conclude vpon any thing, for that was beyond the limits of their commission. It seemed the King of *England* did not greatly disallow the rest of the articles, sauing only the racing of *Calice*. But the Duke of *Gloucester*, the disturber of peace, and enemy to all agreement, made vehement opposition; affirming that it was impossible euer to drawe the French mento any accord which might be for the profit and honour of *England*.

And



And because in these affaires of so great consequence, the King alone had not authority sufficient to confirme the articles of peace, though he likte them neuer so well, without consent of the three estates of his kingdome assembled in Parliamēt; it was agreed, that to the former, three yeeres truce, another twelue month should be added, that in the meane time conuenient leifure might be had, to consider and determine of the matter at large. Neuerthelesse at the Duke of *Lancasters* departure, the French King discovering his minde, shewed him how earnestly he was desirous of peace, to the intent that by this meanes he might bend all his forces against the Turkes and Barbarians, who had lately both driven the King of *Armenia* out of his country, and also entred with great cruelty into the Kingdome of *Hungary*. The Duke well disposed of himselfe, and mooued with the Kings most curteous and honourable discourse, promised him his faithfull furtherance, and that he would neuer cease the imploying of his best endeauours, till he had brought the matter to such a conclusion, as by the King especially, and by all well affected people was generally desired.

The french King made an exchange with his brother *Lewis*, for the Dukedome of *Toureine*, in lieu whereof he gaue him the dukedome of *Orleance* which was much greater; but with this condition, that all his heyres and successors should do homage and fealty to the Kings of *Fraunce* for the same.

A certaine gentleman of the Court called *Peter of Craon*, Sir *Peter* of was highly in fauour with the Duke of *Orleance*, who besides his wife, bare secret affection to another Lady of excellent beauty; and this matter was not vnknowne to that friend of his, whome he vsed so familiarly. It so fell out, that the Duchesse had intelligence of her husbands loue, and therevppon, sending for the Lady, rebukte and threatned her very sharpely. The Lady all abasht and sorrowfull, excused her selfe as well as shee could, and at her next mee-

ring with the Duke, told him all what had happened, and how the matter which he desired to keepe most secret, was discovered to his wife. The Duke dissembling his knowledge, carried himselfe so kindly towards his wife, that in the end he got notice from her, of the party which had betrayed him, namely, *Peter of Craon* : who by this meanes being brought both into the Dukes, and the Kings displeasure, was shortly after banisht the Court. And therevpon finding no quiet harbour in *Fraunce*, he resorted to the Duke of *Britaine* ; who burning with irteconcileable hatred towards the Constable, handled the matter in such sort, as Sir *Peter of Craon* was perswaded, that the Constable through secret complaints and accusations against him, had been the proeurer of his banishment.

Sir *Oliuer Clifton* treacherously assaulted, and almost slaine by Sir *Peter of Craon*.

Ever since the Parisians met the King in armes at his returne out of

Herevpon imagining with himselfe by what meanes he might be reuenged of this iniury, he sent certaine of his household seruants at sundry times to *Paris*, commaunding them to enter the towne disguised, and to keepe themselves private in a house of his : within a while he followed after himselfe. And one day when he had learned certainly by his spies, what time the Constable would returne from Court, he set vpon him comming homeward in the night with small attendants, and wounded him very grieuously : in so much that hauing ouerthrowne him from his horse, he left him in the place for dead. Newes hereof was presently brought to the King, who himselfe came forthwith to visite the Constable, and gaue commaundement also to the Prouost of the Citty, that he should make diligent search with all possible speed to find out the offenders. But it was to no purpose : For Saint *Peter of Craon* as soone as he had committed the fact, fled immediatly vpo the spur towards *Britaine*, through the gate of *S. Anthony*, which at that time stood open, & had done both night and day for many yeeres before. The King sent a messenger to the Duke of *Britaine*, cōmanding him vpon his allegiance to apprehend Sir *Peter of Craon* and send him to *Paris*. The Duke

Duke stiffly denied any such to be there . But the King helde that excuse altogether vnsufficient : and therefore partly mooued with the heinousnesse of the offence, which in some sorte he thought concerned his owne person , and likewise for that hee lawe the Duke to be a continuall disturber of the realme, he leuied a great army and marched towards *Britaine* . The Kings vncles for hatred they bare to the Constable , perswaded him as much as they could, to desist from his purpose. But when they could not preuaile, they themselues also accompanied him in his iourney. At such time as they approached the enemies frontiers, the king who had beene troubled before with a feauer, and certaine light fantasies in his braine, being now distempered with ouermuch heate of the weather, and disquieted with other matters, was sodainely, as he rode vpon the way, deprived of all power and vse of vnderstanding . In such sort , that imagining hee had beene amongst his enemies, he drew out his sword and ranne desperately vpon the Lordes, and the rest of the company which was about him, chasing his owne brother and diuerse others a great way together, soas for their better safety, they were forced to alight from their horses , and shift as well away as they could on foote. At length, catching holde of him behinde, and disarming him, they conueyed him to the next towne for a while , and afterwarde to a certaine castle of *Fraunce* more nearer to *Paris* . Which doone , when consultation was had, to whom the gouernment of the commonwealth should be committed, whether to the Kings vncles, or to his brother, it was thought fittest that his vncles should haue the authoritie, because the other was yet too yong to take the administration vpon him . Whilest the king lay thus diseased, his vncles hauing gotten power and opportunity to deale straitly with those that before had led the King as they listed, droue the Constable out of *France*, and put diuerse others in prison and bondes . The Constable was not expelled by force, but vpon some sharp speeches

*Flaunders*, when to curb their boldnes, he caused all their armour to be taken from them, the chaines of the streetes to bee carried away, and the foure principall gates of the citie from thence soorth to be left alwayes open. The French King falleth sodainly into a frensie.



1391.

Sir John  
Mericer.

giuen him by the Duke of *Burgoigne*, departed of his owne accord, holding it his safest course, by a timely flight to preuent future inconueniences. It grieved his enemies, that he had so escaped, and to the intent they might not seeme to proceede indirectly against him (for they knew the duke of *Burbon* and the Duke of *Orleance* wished him well) they cited him after hee was gone, to the parliament of *Paris*. At the day prefixed when he made no appearance, he was condemned both of felony and treason. For at such time as he lay dangerously sicke of his wounds, vppon the making of his will, his moouable goodes were found to be in value about seauenteene hundred thousand frankes: which huge masse of money many were of opinion he had gotten by very vnlawfull meanes. The rest that were holden in prison, being bereft both of landes and goods, remained also in great daunger of their liues. Of this number, one or two, when they saw their innocence could not shield them from extremitie of perill, conceiued so great sorrow with the consideration of their present estate compared to the glory of their former fortunes, that with weeping and lamenting they had almost made themselues blinde.

---

### *The fourth Booke.*

---



As well the French Kings vnles, as the English, labored very earnestly, that at length a finall peace might be concluded betwixt them. The matter was negotiated by writing, to the intent euery circumstance might be more diligently

gently examined and considered. It seemed to the Englishmen, and specially to the Duke of *Glocester*, that the French men vsed certaine wordes of doubtfull signification, which afterward, as occasion should serue, they might interpret in another sence for their owne aduantage. Therefore they were more circumspect in discussing euery particular, and wheresoeuer any vncertainty or doubtful manner of speech occurred, they would be resolu'd in what construction it should be taken before they passed any further. All such for the most part as had wasted their substance, and impouerished their estates in time of peace, were now desirous of warre; but the two Kings were exceedingly inclined to concord: and especially the French King, in regard of the occasions before mentioned. The banished King of *Armenia* also, by discoursing with how insatiable desire, and what mighty puissance the barbarous nations gap'd, not onely after the kingdome of *Hungary*; but in a maner for all Christendome, gaue great furtherance to the matter in handling. In conclusion, a truce was taken for foure yeares both by sea and land, it being further agreed, that certaine seigniories should be restored on either party, as well to the English as the French, and all the souldiers which liued by spoile and pillage, to be dismissed. The French king who lately before, by the helpe of a certaine skilfull Physitian, had recouered both his vnderstanding, and his speech, about this time relapsed againe into his former extremitie.

A truce for  
foure yeeres  
between Eng  
land & France

Pope *Clement* (who had sustained the opposition of two aduersaries, first *Vrbane*, then *Boniface* newly erected) being dead at *Avinion*, the Cardinales substituted *Benedict* in his place, conditionally, that if the French King did not ratifie his election, another should be chosen. Both the Popes sent their Legates to the French King, and he gaue them both friendly audience, howbeit by the counsell of his diuines, he inclin'd neither to the one, nor the other, but rather sought meanes how to take away all ground of dissention, and to establish quietnesse in the Church. There-  
fore

The death of  
pope Clement

fore sending Ambassadors to the Emperour, whose authoritie, care, and diligence ought to be chiefe in that behalfe, and likewise to the Kings of *Bohemia*, *Hungary* and *England*, he besought them earnestly, that they would help to further the publike welfare and tranquillitie of christendome.

King Richard  
giueth all *A-*  
*quitaine* to  
the duke of  
*Lancaster*.

The King of *England* at this time, by consent of the whole state of his realme, gaue all the Dutchie of *Aquitaine* entirely and freely to the Duke of *Lancaster*, and to his heires for ever. The Duke therefore disposing of his affaires in *England*, sailed ouer into *Aquitaine*, and at *Burdeaux* shewed the graunt which King *Richard* had giuen him. The towncsmen made him answer, That of his presence and comming thither they were glad and ioyful: but to admit his gouernement, and acknowledge him for their soueraine Lord, that could they not yet resolute vpon. Let him first deale and agree with the rest of the Citties, whome it equally concerned, and if they would be content to ratifie the Kings graunt, neither should their part of duety be vnperformed. The men of *Bayon* answered him after the same fashion. And when hee assayed the disposition of seuerall persons, the noblemen and gentlemen being assembled together, gaue this determination: That in regarde the *Aquitaines* were so linked, and as it were engrafted together with the English, that they might by no meanes be separated or conueyed ouer to any other Lorde, therefore they were of opinion, that this gift of the Kings must necessarily be voided and frustrate. At length it was thought good, that commissioners should be sent to pleade the matter before the King himselfe. Who when they came thither, boldly maintained their right; affirming that their feigniory ought not to be alienated from the Crowne of *England*, neither by gift, marriage, composition, nor any other meanes whatsoever. That the Kings of *England* were accustomed at their coronation, to promise by solempne oath that it should be so, and that the King there present had doone

The *Gascones*  
refuse to ac-  
cept the duke  
of *Lancaster*  
for their so-  
ueraigne.



done the same : and therewithall they produced their charter . They alleadged further , that it was most necessarie and behoouefull for the realme , that this custome authorized by the wisdom of graue counsellors, and established by continuance of long time, should still be kept firme and inuiolate. For howsoeuer the Duke of *Lancaster* at this present were a faithfull and assured friend to the English men, yet things could not alwayes continue at one stay : and it might happen heereafter , that hee should conclude some league, or agree vpon some marriage with the Frenchmen, Britons, Burgonions, or others , according as time should serue, and his owne affaires require: whereby it might come to passe, that the Dukedome of *Aquitaine*, which by a certaine peculiar prerogatiue was now annexed to the crown of *England* , should be transferred to a strange Lord , and from thenceforth lost all their ancient aliance and societie with the English nation . When they had finished their speech to this purpose , many were mooued by their reasons to be of the same opinion . But the Duke of *Gloucester* with great vehemencie of spirite opposed himselfe against them , not so much for any affection to his brother , as for that hee wisht him by this meanes to be remooued further off from the realme, to the intent himselfe might the more commodiously rule all things as he listed. After much debating , the *Gascones* request preuailed ; and therevpon word was sent to the Duke of *Lancaster* , that hee shoulde surcease from his enterprise , and insist vpon his graunt no further. Whilst the Duke was absent in the partes of *Aquitaine*, King *Richard* raising an army of thirty thousand Archers , and foure thousand horsemen , passed ouer into *Ireland* : for the conquest whereof, in former times great warreshad beene made by his auncestors . Nine moneths after his arriual, the country was yeelded into his subiection, and their foure petty kings taken prisoners, in framing whose fashions to ciuillity and good manners , no arte nor diligence was omitted : but hardly may a barbarous minde

*K. Richards  
voyage into  
Ireland.*

and sauage nature be reduced to ciuill conuerſation.

1394.

After the death of Queene *Anne* daughter to *Charles* the Emperour, the King of *England* because he had no issue, reſolued vpon a ſecond marriage. But eſpecially about all other nations, he deſired to linke himſelfe with *Fraunce* in a moſt ſtedfaſt bond of amity. Herevpon he began to be a ſuitor for *Iſabell* the French kings daughter, which had lately before been betrothed to the Duke of *Brittaines* Sonne, at *Tours*. This motion did greatly diſpleaſe the Duke of *Glouceſter*, who deſired nothing but warres. The French men for the moſt part were of opinion, that nothing was to be determined in this matter, before peace were thoroughly concluded and eſta bliſhed.

Otherwiſe  
called *Lamora-  
vubiquy*.

*John* the duke  
of *Burgoyne*  
ſonne ſent by  
the French  
king to ayde  
the King of  
*Hungary* a-  
gainſt the  
Turkes.

*Nicopolis*  
beſieged.

*Henrie* King of *Hungary*, brother to *Charles* the Empe-  
ror, being threatned with warres from *Baſam* a mighty and  
puiſſant Prince of the *Turkes*, required ayde of the French  
king: who ſent two thouſand young Gentlemen to his ſuc-  
cour. *John* the ſonne of *Phillip* Duke of *Burgoyne* a young  
Lord of the age of two and twenty yeares, aſſociated for his  
better direction, with that worthy and valiant ſouldier the  
Lord *Cowcy*, was appointed generall of theſe forces. They  
paſſed out of *France* into *Auſtria*, and from thence to *Bu-  
da* in *Hungary*, where being arriued, although the enemy  
before had prefixed a day of battell, yet heard they no  
newes of his coming; therefore it was thought beſt to  
paſſe the army ouer *Danubius*, and to aſſaile him in his  
owne country. They were almoſt an hundred thouſand  
ſtrong, the greater parte of them being horſemen. Now  
when they were entred into the *Turkes* dominion, after the  
taking of ſometownes, they layd ſiege to the city of *Nico-  
polis*, the principall and ſtrongest in thoſe quarters. The  
ſiege continuing ſomewhat long, and affording more va-  
cant time than was conuenient for ſouldiers, the Lorde  
*Cowcy* deſirous to aduaunce his honour and the reputation  
of his name, accompanied with five hundred launces, and  
as many archers, all on horſe-backe, ranged abroad ſome-  
what

what farther into the countrey, to see if hee could meete with any enemy vpon whome he might aduenture his fortune. It happened according to his desire. For the enemy vnderstanding that there were forragers abroad, assembled to the number of twenty thousand, and marched directly against them. When the French men had intelligence thereof, they practised a deuise as the time then serued not vsitting for their purpose. Entering all into a wood, they sent about some hundreth horsemen to entice the *Turkes* out of their strength where they lay at the defence of a certaine passage, to come soorth and skirmish with them. The *Turkes* supposing there had bin no more of their enemies than they sawe, issued presently out against them: and the French men purposely retired vntill such time as they had drawne them to the wood, within compasse of their ambush, which sodainely brake soorth, and invaded them on all sides. By this meanes the *Turkes* being intercepted and cut off, as well by those that freshly assailed them, as by the other which before made countenance to flee, but now turned furiously vpon them, were slaine to the number of fifteene thousand, and the rest hardly saued themselues by flight. *Basan* the Turkish king, howsoeuer hee seemed slacke in his affaires, yet had he perfect intelligence of all his enemies proceedings. For hee was continually certified thereof by *Galens* Duke of *Millaine*, with whome he had great entercourse of friendship. Therefore hee assembled a huge army, the *Souldan* of *Babylon*, the *Medes*, and the King of *Persia*, sending great forces to aide him.

Concerning the Duke of *Millaine*, ye shall vnderstand, that there were sometimes three brothers, *Manfred*, *Galas*, and *Barnabas*. The vnckle of these was Archbishop of *Millaine*. *Lewis* of *Bauier* being elected Emperour, when he could not obtaine his confirmation from the Pope, went to *Rome*, and there of his owne authority creating another Pope, and certaine Cardinales, was by him inuested in his imperiall dignity: and afterward permitted

Fifteen thousand *Turkes* & slaine by one thousand christians vnder the conduct of the Lorde Cony.

A discourse of the Duke of *Millaine*.



ted his souldiers to take the payment of their wages out of the spoyle of the Citty. *Charles* King of *Bohemia*, the Sonne of *Henry* of *Lutsemburge*, was created Emperour against this *Lewis*. Which *Charles* coming newly into *Italy* from *Aquisgrane* where he had receiued his cōsecratiō of the Pope, this Archbishop of *Millaine* entertayned him with great curtesie, and did him all the honour he could, lending him mony also at his departure, to the sum of an hundred thousand crownes. The Emperour in consideration hereof, and to shew his gratefull mind, created the Archbishop, Vicount of *Millaine*, and gaue to him and to his nephews after him, all that seigniory, to hold and enioy the same, till such time as the Emperour should redeeme it againe by repaiment of the whole sum which he had borrowed. After the Archbishops death, *Manfred*, his eldest nephew by the Emperours consent and good liking, succeeded in the seigniory of *Millaine*. But his brothers for enuy dispatched him out of the way, concluding with themselues to seize vppon his estate, and afterward to confirme their authority by alliance in marriage with other Princes. So when they had ridde their elder brother of his life, they made equall partitiō between them, and rayned puisantly by force and policy. *Galeas* in regard he was the elder, had tenne townes, and *Barnabas* had nine. *Millaine* it selfe was indifferently allotted to them both, the one to haue it one yeare, and the other another, by turnes. They leuyed subsidies and taxes of their people from time to time, by most vniust and violent meanes. Such fortresses as either of them held, they furnished with Garrisons of forraine souldiers, of all nations but their own, whome they principally distrusted. Through compulsion and rigour they kept the people in great awe and subiection, exacting most cruell punishment vpon such as stirred neuer so little against them, to the intent to terrify others by their example. They purchased the alliance of Princes with great summes of mony. *Galeas* paid to the Earle of *Sauoy* whose sister he married, an 10 0000 crowns. This

This *Galeas* had like wife a sonne of his own name that married the daughter of *John King of Fraunce*, who in consideration hereof, departed with six hundred thousand frankes towards the payment of his father in lawes ranfome, to the King of *England*. *Valentine* the daughter of this younger *Galeas*, was married to *Lewis Duke of Orleans*, brother to the French King *Charles* the sixt : but her father first paid to him that should be his sonne in law, tenne hundred thousand frankes, surely a wonderfull summe of mony : with part whereof the Earledome of *Blois* was purchased, as we haue heretofore declared.

Betweene the two brothers there was no contention, as long as they liued together. But the younger *Galeas* after his fathers decesse, surprised his vncl *Barnabas* by treason, and slew him.

One of this *Barnabas* daughters was married to *Stephen Duke of Bauier*, and brought forth a daughter named *Isabell*, who afterward became the wife of *Charles King of Fraunce*, as is mentioned in this history already. *Galeas* Pag. 127. hauing thus trecherously slaine his vncl, was not so contented, but persecuted euen his childrens children, and all their generation, seizing into his hands all their goods and possessions. Also he burthened the people with grieuous and continuall exactions.

Besides this, he held a wicked and vnreuerent opinion concerning the Godhead. So he might enrich himselfe and aduance his authority, he regarded not by what means it were effected. Amongst other precepts of good doctrine wherewith he was plentifully instructed, he was also mis-led in this opinion, and tooke it as hereditary from his ancestors, vtterly to despise the Popes authority, and to reioyce exceedingly when any dissention happened in the church. Now the Duke of *Orleance* wife being a very ambitious woman, was not a little faine and desirous that her husband might attaine to the Crowne, by what meanes shee did not greatly regard. Herevppon many suspected

that the kings mind had beene all this while enchanted by her witch-craft. The ground of the suspition grew vppon this occasion. Shee had a Sonne by her husband, a fayre young child, much about the age of the *Dolphin*. As these two children were sporting together in a chamber, a poysoned appell was cast in amongst them, on that side where the kings sonne was : but the child (which may seeme a wonder) refused to meddle withall. Then the other when no body perceiued him, caught it vp, and within a little while after he had eaten of it, through the violent operation of the poyson, yeelded vp the ghost. The report hereof was presently carried to the Court, and soone dispersed ouer all the country. This also was another thing which encreased the suspition, that during all the time of the Kings sickness, he would endure neyther the Queene, nor any other woman to come about him, but only this Duchesse of *Orleans*. By these occasions, mens minds being meruailously incensed, shee was conueyed from the Court to a certaine castle not farre from *Paris*, and there restrayned of her liberty. Besides, her husband conceiued great displeasure against her about the death of his sonne. When *Galeas* of *Milaine* vnderstood how his daughter was entreated, he was highly offended, and sent ambassadours forthwith into *Fraunce*, where they found nothing so friendly entertainment as he expected. Therefore about such time as the voyage was vndertaken into *Hungarie*, he proclaymed warres against the French King : and the more to grieue his enemy, entred in league with *Basan* the Turke, and made him acquainted both with his owne affaires, and with the state of *Fraunce*.

*Albert* Earle of *Henault*, whereas *William* his sonne was purposed to haue gone this expedition against the Turkes, ceased not to exhort him that he should rather make warre vppon the *Phrisoners*, which contrary to all right withdrew themselves from his obedience. The young Earle obeying his fathers commaund, assembled his men of warre from



from all parts adioyning, and being likewise assisted both with French and English succours, tooke shipping together and sayled into *Frisland*. Within few daies after their arriuall, endeavouring to passe ouer the banks and ditches wherewith that country is strongly fenced, the wilde Frisoners hauing intelligence of their enemies approche, made stout opposition against them. But after long conflict, through the valour and prowesse of the horsemen and archers, who by a secret passage had conueyed themselves neerer vnto them, they were suddainely ouer-charged and many of them slaine. Little else was performed at that time, by reason the winter was so neere at hand. But about twoo yeares after, the warres being renued there againe, those haughty and prowd stomacks of theirs, were forced to yeild vnder his subiection, and to acknowledge him for their Lord, whome alwaies before they had contemned.

*Friseland* subdued by the Earle of *Hennault*.

After the King of *England* had long solicited his marriage with the French kings daughter, and that many ambassadours had passed betweene them, at length it was concluded, that both the kings should meet in person at a certaine town which was the mid way between the French territory & *Calice*. This agreement took effect, and the french King himselfe deliuered his daughter by the hand to the King of *England*. But before the matter could be brought to this conclusion, king *Richard* was faine to feed his vncke the Duke of *Gloucester* both with gifts and large promises. For he hated peace extreemly, and was of so peruerse and proude dilposition, that the King stood in great feare least he should haue raised his commons against him, and therefore hold it his best course to assure himselfe of his friendship. After the consummation of these nupcialles the French King was purposed to haue made inuasion vpon the Dukedome of *Millaine*; and the King of *England* had already promised to ayde him with six thousand archers. But there happened a matter in the mean time, which gaue occasion

1396.

King *Richard* marrieth *Isabel* the french kings daughter.

occasion of new deliberation.

The Hungarians and French men together had strongly besieged *Nicopolis*, and conceiued good hope, that in short space they should become Lords of the City. In the meane while *Basam* the Turkish King, assembled out of his owne dominions and the countries of Princes adioyning, about two hundred thousand men. He sent almost eight thousand before, and deuided the rest of his whole army into two battelles. As soone as our men were aduertised of their comming, they presently prepared to meete them. And because the scowtes which they had sent forth to discouer, reported that the enemies were but a small number, (for they had seene no more then those eight thousand fore-riders) the French men in great heate made hast to the encounter. As they were thus in a readinesse, the King of *Hungary* sent them word, that they should not be too forward, for he mistrusted the scowts had not taken a full view of their enemies forces : and that he had sent out some others better acquainted with the coasts of the country, who within few houres would assuredly returne and bring more certain intelligēce. The Lord *Cowcy* & many others alowed this aduise, and thought it necessary by all meanes to be followed. But the Constable *Phillip* of *Artoys*, because his opinion was not first demaunded, prowdly and peruerfly misconstrued the kings profitable counsell, as if his intent had beene to bereaue the French men of their oportunity, (beeing already raunged in battell,) and to assume the honour of the victory to himselfe.

One mans  
pride, causeth  
many mens  
destruction.

To this effect he vitered many idle words ; nor for that he was so perswaded himselfe, or could by any good reason dissallow of the King of *Hungaries* counsell, but because he enuyed the Lord *Cowcyes* late honourable exployt, and the reputation he had gained by defeating so great number of enemies with so small forces. And he disdained not a little, that himselfe being both for dignity and reuenuē one of the greatest subiects in *France*, any other should be preferred

ferred before him : presuming that his opinion and authority in such cases ought principally to take place, and to be respected about the rest. Therefore reiecting the King of *Hungaries* aduise which the residue approoued, and supposing there was no delay to be made in the matter, without expecting the ayde of his associates, he marched forward against the enemy. By occasion whereof, the rest were likewise enforced to ioyne their powers with his, vnlesse they would bee accounted betrayers of their company.

See what mischiefe comes of pride and emulation. Now were their enemies vppon them, and the French men so besette on all sides with huge numbers which encompassed them about, that they saw no way to escape. And although they were very few in comparison of their enemies, yet in this distresse they shewed proofs of invincible corage: but they were so oppressed with multitude, that it was impossible for them to auoyd a lamentable destruction. The Lords for the most part were all taken prisoners, the beauty and riches of their armour discovering them to the Barbarous people, who saued their liues in hope to make great commodity of their ransoms. After the victory, king *Basam* caused a view of the dead bodies to be taken, and when he vnderstood that there were many more slaine of his part, then of his enemies, being enraged with great fury, he commanded 300. gentlemen of diuers nations that remained prisoners, should be all cruelly slaine, & cut in peeces. The King of *Hungary* when he saw how the frenchmen without further expectation, would rashly aduenture against the enemy, was exceedingly sory : and when he beheld their miserable ouerthrowe, by perswasion of such as were about him, not seeing any other remedy, he himselfe also fled and passed ouer *Danubius*. Vndoubtedly the pride and enuy of the French men gaue the enemy that daies victory. *Basam* the Turkish King, after he vnderstood the estate of his prisoners, such I meane as were of greater birth and calling

The siege before *Nicopolis* raised, and all the Frenchmen slaine or taken prisoners.



then the rest, determined no violence against them, but sent a messenger into *Fraunce* to giue notice of their captiuitie and the ouerthrowe of the Christian army. *Phillip* Duke of *Burgoigne* who tooke his sonnes misfortune very heauily, perswaded the French King, that he should send some rich presents to the barbarous tyrant, whereby he might be moued to deale more fauorably with his prisoners.

Of all others the Lord *Conceyes* noble spirit was most dejected with this calamity : For entring into a deepe consideration with himselfe how hee had alwayes heeretofore beene very fortunate in wairelike affaires, and now hauing receiued so great a charge from a mighty prince, could not hold his place and execute his office for the enuy of his aduersary, but was brought in danger of his life through another mans rashnesse in a barbarous countrey, with the losse and slaughter of a great number of his friendes, vpon the conceit heereof, he died for sorrowe. To the like end also came the party, that by his folly and indiscretion drew so many thousand people, and so many honourable personages into destruction and extreame miserie.

The Lord  
*Conceyes* death

1397.

The Duke of *Burgoigne*, to the intent to redeeme his sonne, and the rest of his fellow prisoners from captiuitie, dealt with the Merchants of *Venice* (which trauell into all parts of the world for commodities) that ioyning with the other Ambassadors sent by the French King, they shoulde compound with the Turkes for their ransome. The composition which they made, was to this effect, that the Lords and Gentlemen that remayned prisoners, to the number of fiue and twenty, should pay for their ransome two hundred thousand crownes : and for this summe the Merchants became sureties. From that time forth *Basam* beganne to vse the French men more curteously than he had done : and at their departure, taking occasion to speake to the Duke of *Burgoignes* sonne, I perceiue (saide he) that thou arte descended of high and noble parentage, & liuest in great expecta

pectation of honour : it can not be but a great grieffe and  
oppression to thy minde, thus in the flower of thy youth,  
to be subiected to this misfortune; for recouery of which  
disgrace, and to put away the sad remembraunce of this  
aduenture, perhappes thou wilt one day come in battell a-  
gainst me againe. And although by the lawe of armes I  
haue now power to binde both thee and thy fellowes from  
euer bearing armes against mee heereafter, yet will I not  
doe it, but freely giue leaue both to thee and the rest, that  
being returned into your countries, yee shall assemble your  
vttermoſt forces, and make warres vpon me againe when-  
ſoeuer ye are diſpoſed. For I am of that courage and puiſ-  
ſaunce, and withall ſo confident in my fortunes, as I dread  
not the power of any enemy whatſoeuer : And this that I  
ſpeake, thou mayeſt boldly make report to whome thou  
thinkeſt good, in my name. Soone after, the French men  
being diſcharged, ſailed with the Venetians to *Rhodes*, and  
departing from thence, after a long and troubleſome paſ-  
ſage, at length arriued ſafely at *Venice*. During the time  
they ſoiourned there, the King of *Hungary* ſent a meſſen-  
ger to congratulate their deliuerance, ſignifying how much  
he reioyced at their happy enlargement : withall, how hee  
vnderſtoode they were to pay a great maſſe of money for  
their ranſome : and he heartily wiſhed his eſtate were ſuch,  
that he were able to ſupply their defect therof in ſuch plen-  
tifull manner as he deſired. But as now by reaſon of the late  
vnfortunate ouerthrow, hee was much impoueriſhed, and  
the yearely reuenues of his Crowne not a little impayred,  
Neuertheleſſe, for ſome teſtimony of his good affection,  
whereas the State of *Venice* was to pay him yearely ſeauen  
thouſand crownes, hee had giuen commiſſion to his meſ-  
ſengers to ſell that annuity, and the money riſing thereof  
to beſtow vpon them towards the furniſhing of their wants  
and maintenance of their neceſſary expences. The French  
men thankfully accepted this kindneſſe, but the Veneti-  
ans answered ſubtilly and vncertainely to the matter; and

there were some that suspected it was handled in such sort, of set purpose between them and the ambassadors of *Hungary*.

The Duke of *Burgoigne* obtayning a friendly beneuolence of his people, not without helpe of the French kings liberalitie, discharged his credite with the Merchants. His sonne being returned into *France*, made a large relation to the king of such things as he had obserued through the whole course of his voyage: in conclusion adding thus much, how it was not vnknowne to the *Turkes*, that thorough the ciuill dissention of the Popes, the generall quiet, not onely of the Church, but also of all Christendome, was disturbed; and that it seemed a wonder to them, how euer Kings and Princes could suffer such licentious libertie and vnbridled ambition of one or two persons to remaine vncontrolled. The kings mind was exceedingly moued with this discourse, so as from that time forward he intended to the establishing of peace more earnestly than euer before.

At the marriage of King *Richard* to the French Kings daughter, a truce was agreed vpon for thirtie yeeres.

The Duke of *Gloucester* being altogether of a turbulent and seditious nature, was not a little angrie and discontented in his minde, that so many yeares truce was taken betweene the two Kings, who were now so linked and vnited together by marriage, as there was no other expectation, but that a finall peace should be concluded betwixt them. Heereupon he caused seditious rumors to be spread abroad, and such as imported danger to the Kings person, whome hee had now purposed in his mind to put besides the gouernement of the kingdome. And knowing himselfe to be in great fauour and authority with the Londoners, hee perswaded them that from thencefoorth they should refuse the payment of the tax which was imposed vpon all kindes of merchandise certaine yeares since, for maintenaunce of the warres, and defence of the Countrey, seeing now all was quiet againe, and a truce taken with the enemy: for such kinde of exactions hee saide were vniust, and contrary to reason. The people by petition moued this



this matter to the King, who referred his answer till the Parliament at *Westminster*, which being come, the Duke of *Lancaster* made publike declaration of the Kings minde, in such sort as they were all well pacified for that time, and departed without further trouble. Not long after, the earle of Saint *Paul* sent from the French king to visite the new married Queene, arriued at the Court of *England*: who vnderstanding of the Duke of *Gloucesters* treacherous practises, exhorted the King to prouide a timely remedie for such inconueniences. After his departure, a generall brute was raised, that the king would restore *Calice* to the French men, and that hee had already concluded vpon the matter with the earle, whome the French king had sent Ambassadour for the same purpose. There was not any thing what-focuer that could more vehemently haue incensed all *England* against the King, than this. And the Duke of *Gloucester* taking occasion hereat, perswaded the people, that they should expostulate the matter with the king, to know certainly his intention. The king answered in such sort as any sound and indifferent iudgement might well haue been satisfied, and easily haue seene that this rumour was meere-ly contriued by enuie and detraction. These false reportes and malicious suggestions greatly troubled the kings mind, and when hee vnderstoode that his vnkle aspired to the Crowne, and studied how to bring his purpose to effect, not without bewayling the present state of his countrey, he asked counsell of the Duke of *Lancaster* and some others, (whose dispositions hee mistrusted not) what course they would aduise him to in this behalfe. The Duke and the rest as well as they could, endeouored to quiet his thoughts, and to remooue all seare and suspition out of his minde, assuring him, that their loue and good affection should neuer faile to doe him faithfull seruice. But in the end, the matter proceeded so farre, that such as were most familiar with the King, and nearest about him, being vnable to brooke the pride and overdaring insolencie of the Duke of *Glouce-*

The Earle of  
Saint *Paul*.

ster (for he hated all those whom the King fauoured) protested plainly, that in regarde of his seditious practises, they could no longer continue their places without great danger of their liues, and hazard of their estates. And therevppon diuerse were seene, and those of the chieffer sort, to abandon the Court, and retire themselues to their country dwellings: for it was no hard matter to foresee to what issue all things tended. To be short, the King moued with these speeches concurring with so manifest presumptions, after much deliberation, vnder a politicke pretence of great kindnesse, allured his vnckle from his owne house to ride abroade with him a hunting. Who being by this meanes trayned foorth with a small company, was by the Earle Marshall sodainely arrested in the Kings name, and conueyed in great secrecie to the Castle of *Calice*. When hee had remained there a while, much mistrusting what should become of him, one day as hee was entred into the great chamber, and about to wash his handes before dinner, foure lusty fellowes, appoynted by the Kings commaundement, cast a towell about his necke, and winding it strongly a crosse two at the one end, and two at the other, ouerthrew him to the ground, and strangled him. Then stripping off his clothes, and closing his eyes, they layd him in his bed, and presently gaue it foorth in the Castle, how the Duke that night died sodainely of an apoplexy. Within two dayes after, his death was published: but there were few or none, either in *Fraunce* or *England* that greatly bewailed him. For such was his desert, as he had long since purchased euery mans ill affection, by reason of his turbulent spirite, which was altogether bent to mooue vnquietnesse and contention. Neuerthelesse the Londoners tooke his death in very ill parte, and so did the kings other vnckles, especially the Duke of *Lancaster*, who could well haue found in his heart to reuenge this cruell outrage committed vppon his brother, but that hee feared the kings puissance, now greatly increased by reason of his marriage.

After

The duke of  
*Gloucester*  
murdered in  
the castle of  
*Calice*.

1397.

After the murther of the duke of *Gloucester*, certaine others also were executed at *London* as accessary to his treason and conspiracie. The Earle of *Warwicke* a man much respected in the common-wealth, should likewise haue tasted of the same cup, but that by intercession of his friends, the kings rigour was somewhat mitigated, and so he was banished into the Ile of *Wight*. The duke of *Gloucester* left a sonne vnder age, and therefore the king tooke all his landes into his owne custodie, and appoynted his mother to giue attendance vppon the Queene. It is the custome of *England*, that the king hath the wardship of all Noble mens heires, and the vse of their landes till they come to one and twenty yeares of age. The king who knew well how greuously he had offended his vncles by killing their brother, growing now suspicious of all men, kept continually a Garde of two thousand archers about him for the defence of his person.

*Richard earle of Arundell.*

*Henry Earle of Derby* the Duke of *Lancasters* sonne, a man highly in fauour of the people, in priuate and familiar conference between him and the Earle Marshall, cast forth certaine speeches ouer-liberally against the king. The Marshall, to winne fauour with the king, vttered all their communication in an assembly of the Lordes, appeaching him of treason, and proffering the combate. The Earle on the contrary parte, retorted the treason vppon himselfe, and accepted his challenge. The King in whose presence all this had passed, was meruailously displeased, and leauing the company, withdrew himselfe into his chamber. Many thought the King much too blame, in that hee suffered the matter to proceede so farre (for the Champions were at great charge to furnish themselves against the day of combate) esteeming it his peculiar duty, to haue vsed his authoritie for restraining of such quarrells as these, whereby occasions of much trouble might ensue afterward. When the King vnderstoode that such speeches were giuen soorth, and withall, how it was generally ill taken in the behalfe of the

*Thomas Mowbray Duke of Norffolke.*



The Earle of *Derby* & the Erle Marshall banished.

the Earle of *Derby*, to the intent to giue satisfaction both to the Lordes and the Commons who loued not the Earle Marshall, he tooke the matter into his owne handes, and gaue sentence, that the duke of *Lancasters* sonne should be banished for tenne yeares, and the Earle Marshall for euer. At the Earle of *Derbies* departure, the King of his owne accord, released foure yeares of his banishment: and the Earle following his fathers counsell, repaired to the french king, who gaue him very curteous and honourable entertainment. Great sorrow and discontentment was shewed by the *Londoners* when he departed, and from that time forward all things there tended to a bloudy and sorrowfull conclusion.

The Duke of *Burgoignes* sonne.

After the Lordes of *France* were raunsomed from the Turkes and returned into their countrey, the French King much mooued with the Earle of *Neuers* discourse, to the intent to establist concord in the Church, addressed Letters forthwith to the Emperour, earnestly requesting his assistance in that behalfe. By mutuall consent a day was appoynted for their meeting at *Rhemes*. Other matters were deuised and giuen forth for the occasion of their comming thither, that the true cause of that assembly, which they were desirous to conceale, might for a time be kept secret. After a solemne enterview and great consultation, it was agreed, that the Bishop of *Cambrai* should be directed to Pope *Boniface* then lying at *Rome* to exhort him, that for the generall quiet and welfare of the Church, he would be content to resigne his office, not for euer, but onely till such time as by the determination of Princes and learned Diuines, a resolution of all controuersies might be established. The Pope answered gently, that he would take the aduise of his Cardinales. But the people of *Rome* in the meane while hauing learned the cause of the Ambassadors comming, and perceiuing it would turne greatly to their discommoditie, perswaded the Pope that hee should not for any respect of Kings or Princes whosoever, abase himselfe

selfe so much, but rather stand in defence of his right to the vttermost. The Pope therefore dissembling his purpose, at his next communication with the Ambassadour, told him, that for his part he would not refuse to accomplish the Emperours and the Kings request, so as his aduersary would be content to doe the like. Being dismissed with this answer, the Ambassadour returned to the Emperour, whom he found at *Confluence*, and when he had deliuered his message, departed from thence into *France*.

The Diuines there were of opinion, that the like motion should be made to *Benedict*, as had bin before to *Boniface*. And vpon this determination the said Bishop beeing sent by the King to *Avinion*, declared the mindes and intentions of the Princes to the Pope. Who answered plainly and peremptorily, that hee would condescend to no such matter. Notwithstanding when he had propounded it to his Cardinales, they were of sundry opinions, according as they were moued by their seuerall dispositions and affections. And when no certaintie could be concluded, by reason of the difference amongst them, their assembly brake vp. Then the Ambassadour pressing into the Popes presence, required his resolution. The Pope proudly answered, how he was lawfully and orderly promoted to that holy dignity, which hee would in no wise forgoe as long as he liued, neyther was any man liuing so deere vnto him for whose pleasure hee would departe from his right, and much lesse did he feare any force or violence in that behalf. The Ambassador seeing no other answer could be gotten, returned homewards, and by the way shewed the successe of his affaires to the Marshall of *France*, whome the king had sent with an army to second his proceedings. The Marshall as soone as hee vnderstoode the Popes obstinate resolution, made haste to *Avinion*, and foraged all the country about, diuiding his forces into diuerse companies, to keepe all conueiance of victuall from the towne. He himselfe encamped before the City, threatening the inhabitants

Pope Benedict  
besieged, and  
taken priso-  
ner by the  
Frenchmen.

to destroy all their houses, and their vineyardes which they had abroad in the countrey, vnlesse they yeelded. The townesmen well considering there was little helpe in the Pope, and that the King was of great puissaunce, tooke counsell with certaine French Cardinales, and by their aduise set open their gates. The Pope suffered himselfe to be besieged in his pallace, hoping to haue beene rescued by his cousine the King of *Arragon*: but the King of *Arragon* was too wise to incur the offence of so mighty a Prince for the Popes pleasure, from whom he could expect small succour againe if occasion should serue heereafter. Many of his Cardinales exhorted him to a milder kinde of carriage, but the Pope full of pride and arrogancie stood firme in his first resolution, seeming as it were secure of his estate, and altogether carelesse what should become of him. Hee was plentifully furnished of all necessaries, sauuing onely fewell, the want whereof, together with the incessant importunity of the Cardinales, compelled him at length to yeelde vp the place. The Marshall bound him by othe, that hee should not departe out of the Citty before such time as an vnion were established in the Church, and to be sure he should not falsifie his promise, appoynted a sufficient garde to attend him, and caused the Cardinales and rich Cittizens of *Avinion* to become sureties for his forth-comming. The French King hauing written the whole discourse of these proceedings to the Emperour, solicited the King of *England*, that following their example, he should likewise take parte with neyther of the Popes, but stand indifferent for a time, till some remedy might be provided. The King was very willing to haue satisfied his father in lawes request. But when the matter was propounded in parliament, hee not onely effected nothing of his desire, but more and more vehemently incensed the people against him, whome it exceedingly offended, that he should be so addicted to the French men, that to doe them a pleasure, it seemed hee would haue condescended to anie thing.



thing. And they told him, that how soeuer they had beene otherwise well contented to set aside all partialitie of affection, either to the one partie, or the other, yet in regarde the French King so earnestly desired it, they would not agree to his request, nor in any wise allow that hee shoulde prescribe articles of religion in *England*.

About this time died the Duke of *Lancaster*, a vertuous and prudent prince; of whose death as a thing desired, the king of *England* very ioyfully sent newes into *Fraunce*. As Duke of *Lancaster* for his sonne, who soiourned the same time in the French court, he was so farre from recalling him againe to receiue his fathers inheritance, that hee also seised it into his owne hands, as appertaining to himselfe till the time of the earles banishment were expired. And not content heerewith, he distributed many of the Duke of *Lancasters* goodes among such persons as no man loued, but himselfe. The Earle of *Derby* was highly fauoured and respected by the French King, in regarde of his noble carriage and generous disposition. And because hee was also a man of great possessions, there was a match motioned betweene him and the Duke of *Berries* daughter which was then a widow. Whereof as soone as the King of *England* had intelligence, he sent an Ambassador forthwith to interrupt their proceedings; informing his father in law and his vncles, that hee with whome they intended to contract affinitie, was a wicked person and a traitour. The Earle from whome all this was kept secret, to the intent to learne what the Ambassadour had doone (for he mistrusted somewhat because he had not seene him all the time of his being there) fell in communication againe with the French King and his brothers, concerning the marriage. And they not thinking good to hold him longer in suspence, declared what reporte they hadde heard of him from the King of *England*. How much the Earle was griued and discontented heerewithall, any man out of his owne iudgement may easily coniecture. All the nobilitie of *England* for the most part, with the Londoners,

The death of  
John of Gaunt  
Duke of Lan-  
caster.  
1399.

were exceedingly displeased at this his vnworthy and iniurious accusation, for they knew assuredly it proceeded of mere malice & hatred. King *Richard* the same time made preparation for another voyage into *Ireland*, assembling to the number of tenne thousand archers, and two thousand

*Henry Percie*  
earle of *Nor-*  
*thumberland*  
and his sonne

horsemen: and hee banished two noble men of great account, because they refused to accompany him in that iourney. For those Lordes hauing spoken somewhat boldly of the King, when they vnderstoode by their friends that he had knowledge thereof, they thought it better to disobey his commaund, than, by comming when he sent for them, to put their liues and estates in manifest perill: and therevpon sentence of banishment was pronounced against them. To be short, many causes concurred together at one time to aggrauate the peoples hatred against the King. By occasion whereof, certaine ill disposed persons taking advantage of the time, when they saw the king both busied in warre, and irreouerably deprived of the loue of his subiects, assembling together in rowts and companies, made spoyle of the husbandmen, robbed the Merchants, and ranged ouer all the countrey, doing great violence and mischief, insomuch that many to auoyde the daunger of their outrage, were forced to conuey themselues into *London*, and other places of securitie.

*Thomas A-*  
*rundell.*

When the king had thus vtterly lost the harts of his people, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, by generall consent of the State, was addressed to the Erle of *Derby*, to bring him againe into *England*, vpon most assured hope and expectation of the Crowne. The Bishop vndertooke and perfourmed this charge so secretly, that none knew of his going, saue those that were interestted in the action, and when he came into *Fraunce*, not any man there could coniecture the true cause of his comming. The Earle of *Derby* politike-ly dissembing the matter, requested leaue of the French King to goe into *Britaine* to visite the Duke, with whome he made no long tarriance, but tooke shipping, and with-

in

in few dayes after arriued in *England*. By reason of the Archbishops presence and authoritie, hee found no interruption in his passage, but trauelled along towards *London*. And when they approached neare the citty, they sent a messenger before to giue notice of their comming. At which tidings the Cittizens sodainely surprisid with ioy, came flocking out of the gates in great companies to welcome the Earle; from thencefoorth couenaunting to receiue him for King of *England*. Soone after, a certaine number well appointed were sent forth against king *Richard*, to apprehend him and bring him to *London*. Many of the Kings followers when they vnderstood of the *Londoners* comming, soone changed their seruice, and chose them new Masters. At first the King made some shew of resistance, but seeing his people forsake him, by counsell of his friends, hee retired into the castle of *Flint*. When the Earle drew nigh, accompanied with some two hundreth men and the rest of his army following after, he approached the Castle gate and sent word to the king how he required to speake with him, wherevpon himselfe onely and twelue more were admitted entraunce. As soone as hee sawe the King, without yeelding him any reuerence; Sir (saide he) you must this day prepare towards *London*, for so the people are fully purposed. What should hee doe in this distresse? Being destitute of succour and beholding his enemies forces before his face, to escape the fury of the people, he yeelded himselfe to the Earles mercie. As they carried him towards *London*, he requested one thing very earnestly, which was, that hee might not be led through the Citty. His request was graunted, but the people much offended. As soone as he came thither, he was conueyed to prison. New officers and seruants were placed about the Queene, and other Ladies and Gentlewomen appointed to attend her, all the French being dismissed, and sent home into their countrey. The Earle hauing brought his matters to this passe, the first thing hee did, hee recalled the Earle of *Warwicke*.

Hee should  
haue vsde the  
benefit of o-  
portunity.



and certaine others that were banished . And shortly after hee caused to be beheaded foure of the chiefe that had bin about King *Richard*, by whose counsell hee confessed himselfe to haue been principally ruled in those matters which were objected against him . They were drawne to their execution vnder the prospect of his windowe , of purpose that he might see them . The Lords that accompanied him in prison bewailed their miserable estates, and the King himselfe with the consideration of his heauie misfortune, burst forth into aboundance of teares, and with bitter sighes cursed the day and houre that euer hee was borne, to come to such an end as now entred into his cogitation. He was perswaded by his partners in misery, that to appease his aduersary, and to purchase the assurance of his owne safety, and such as were about him, hee should renounce his royall state and dignity. Herevpon he required to haue communication with the Earle, to whome when hee had declared his mind, after the acceptance of his offer, the Earle fell into a bitter reproofe of his former life, making a large repetition of his offences, and besides, vpbayded him with bastardy : for many reported that he was begotten by a Priest . Within few dayes after King *Richard* in open assembly of the Lordes at the Tower of *London*, with all ceremonies and solemnities incident to such occasions, resigned the Crowne and Scepter, with all his right and interest in the kingdome, to *Henry* of *Lancaster*, reducing himselfe into a priuate estate, without assurance of his life, after he had reigned two and twenty yeares. This alteration of the State in *England* so troubled the French King, that hee fell againe into his olde disease . But the Counsaile of *Fraunce* sent certaine Ambassadors to visite the Queene his daughter, and to vnderstand in what state shee remained . The Duke of *Burbon* was likewise sent into the country of *Burdelys* : which seigniory, since King *Richard* (to whome the people in those partes were wonderfully affected) was fallen into this calamity, the French men went about to reco-

1399.  
King *Richard*  
deposed.

uer againe to themselves. But when the chiefe of the Cities had propounded the matter to the Commons, they could not preuaile. For the people feared much to be oppressed againe with the often taxes and tallages which they had endured of olde tyme vnder the French men. Certaine great Lords of *England* had secretly conspired against *Henry* their new King, but their practise being discovered, they were all put to death.

The French King raising a puissant army, determined to haue inuaded *England*. But it hapned about the same time that King *Richard* ended his life at *London*. My Authour reporteth that he could not learne certainly by what means he came to his death: but that *Henry* the late crowned king was incessantly called vpon by the people to dispatch him out of the way, because otherwise the realme should neuer want matter of trouble and dissention. Neuerthelesse he addeth further, that the King in regarde hee had giuen him a faithfull promise of his life, would not condescend to their requests. Now when the matters betweene *Fraunce* and *England* seemed thus to tend toward a sorrow full issue, by mediation of good men a truce was obtained and confirmed for sixe and twenty yeares. The French men were the rather inclined to peace, by reason of their Kings infirmitie.

Mention hath beene made of the earle Marshall of *England* banished by king *Richard*, vpon occasion of his quarrell with the Earle of *Derby*. As soone as he vnderstoode that *Henry* of *Lancaster* had obtained the Crwn e, and that King *Richard* was dead, hee conceiued so great grieve and displeasure therevpon, that incontinently he fell sicke and died, at *Venice*. Moreouer Pope *Benedict*, because that

after so many aduertisements he would not in-

cline to the will of the Princes, was de-

priued of his honor and Pon-

tificall dignitie.

( \* \* )



*Corrections of faults escaped in the Printing.*

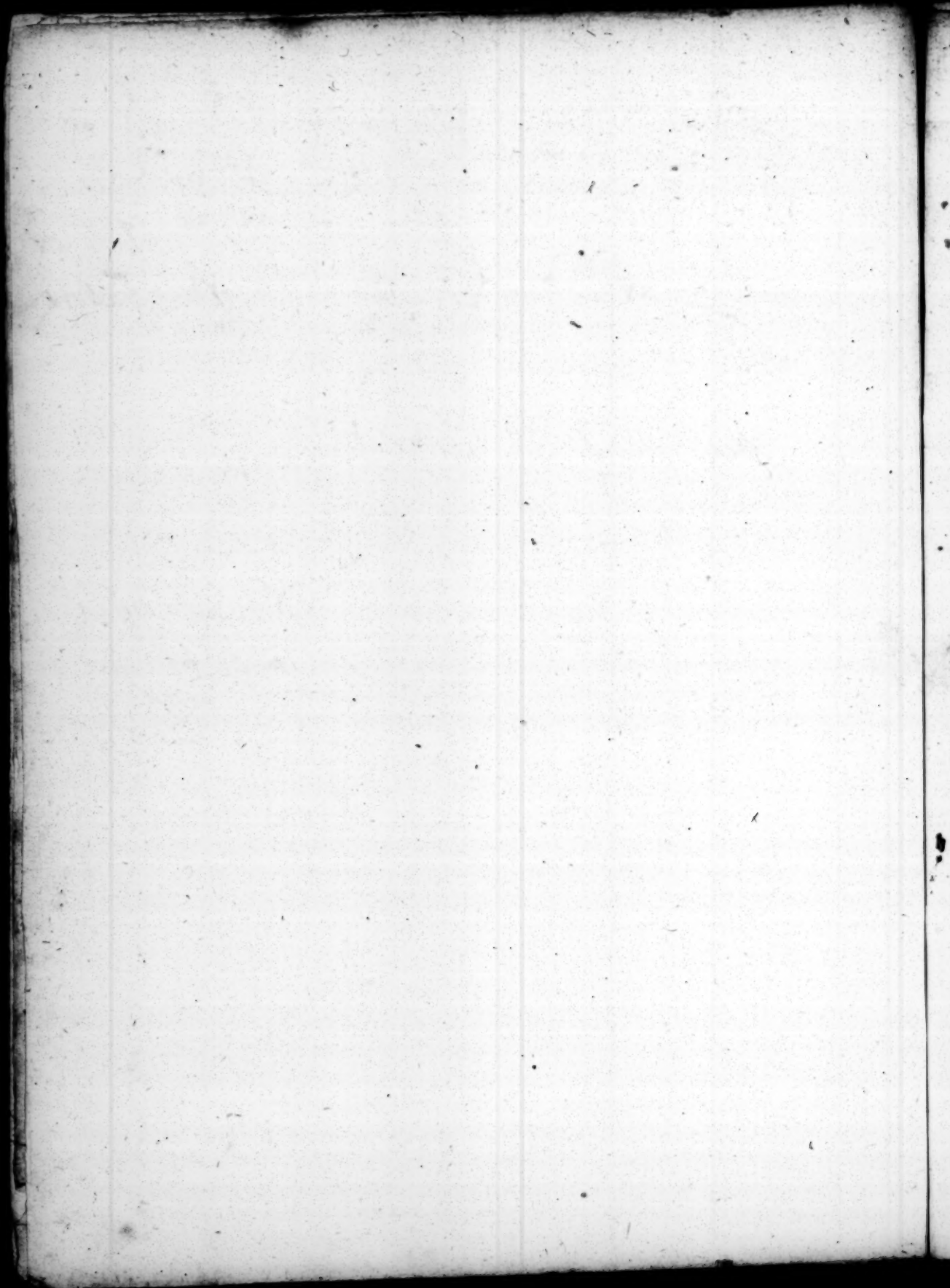
**P**Age 37. line 20. rabble *pa. 53. li. 2.* some Other Lord vnder *pa. 60. l. 15.* recovered there, *pa. 84. li. 8.* for *Arde*, reade *Oudenard*, and 10 in all other places. *Pag. 96. li. 1.* forelaid by an *pag 115. li. 2.* submitted *pa. 116. li. 21.* and no man be able *pa. 121. li. 25.* now a league *pa. 122. li. 36.* thankfully *pag. 145. li. 9.* whome hee had lately contracted *pa. 156. li. 10.* ignoble disposition *Ibidem li. 20.* some alteration *pag. 162. li. 18.* few houres *pa. 164. li. 21.* much altercation *pa. 184. li. 14. & 15.* which was, That the French king should giue *pa. 197. li. 30.* nuzled in this opinion.



In mo & equally Complaunt to  
your Honor and the Hon<sup>ble</sup> your  
Right Hon<sup>ble</sup> Lords of the  
Lat in the County of Calway

Y<sup>r</sup> Servant  
I of John Madam

Daughter of  
Christina of Janin  
and  
and  
and

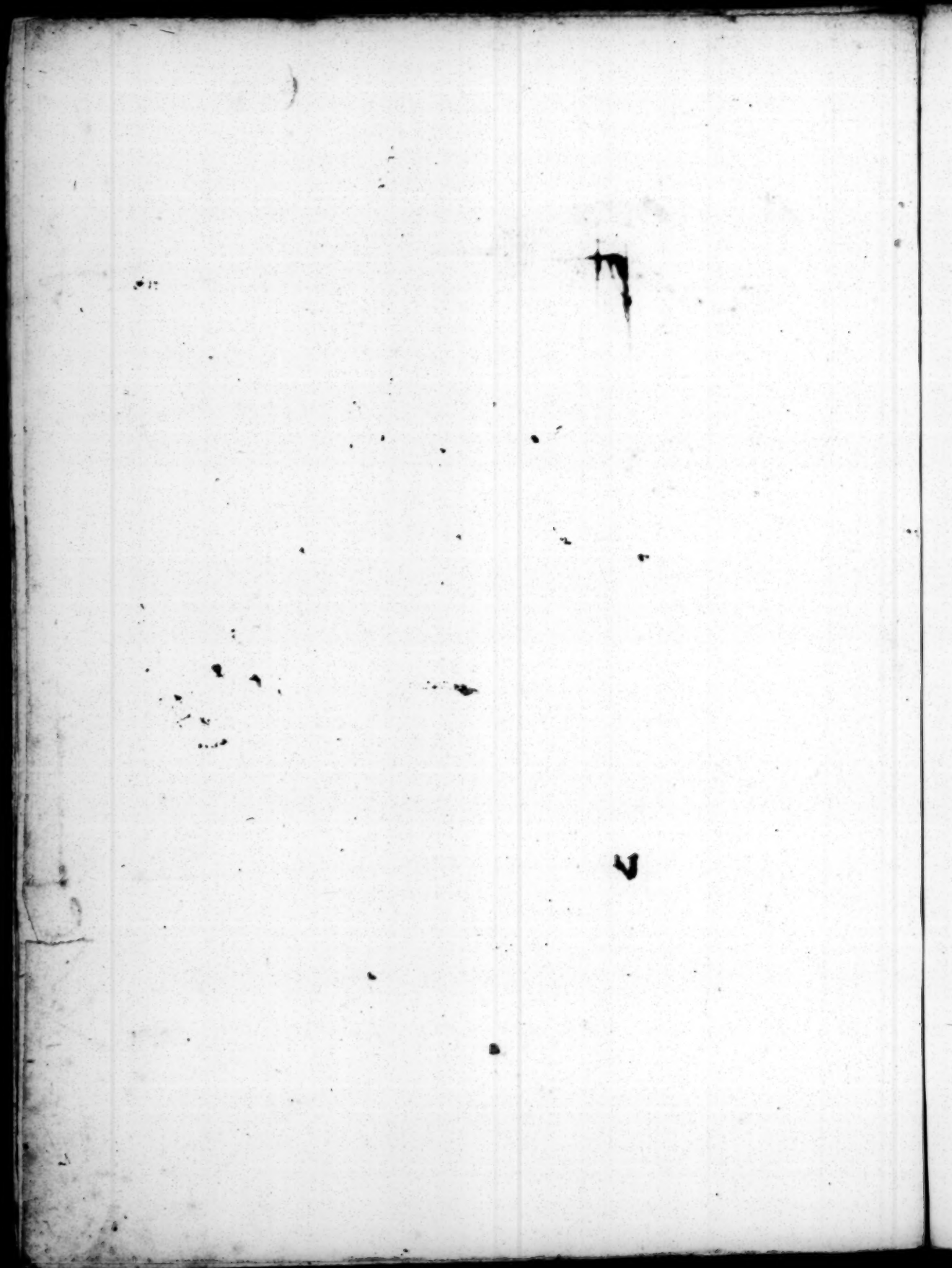


1 Sept. Bal d'pod q'poud.  
4 3200 10.0 Br. Rec. office and 14 bars q'poud.  
- 14 bars. magosindl.

2 Bldg 9 Bldg 1 to Laid off  
for 2 to L: Earl of Montgomery

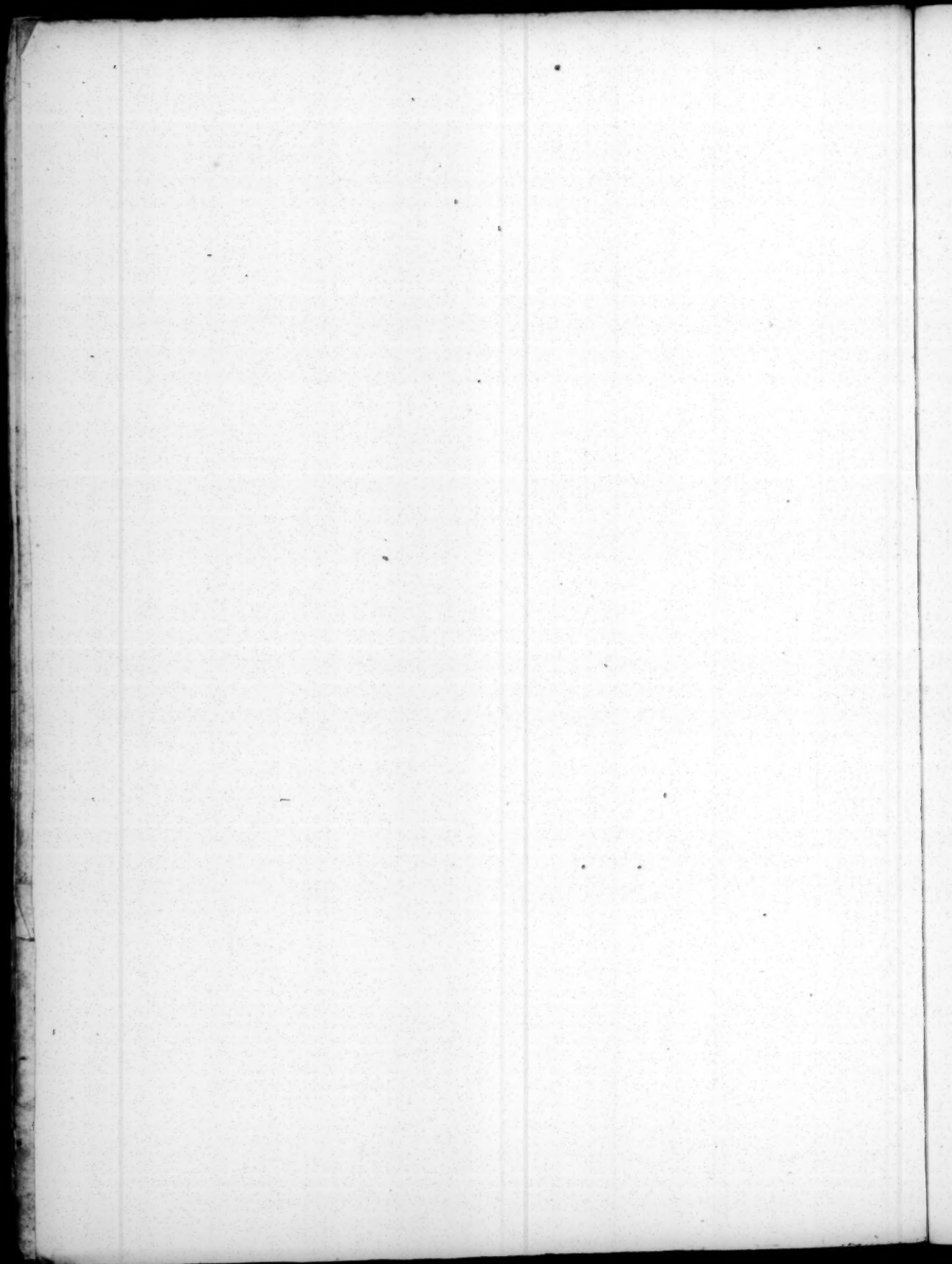
Lead it with more  
careful of its be-  
havior of its body —





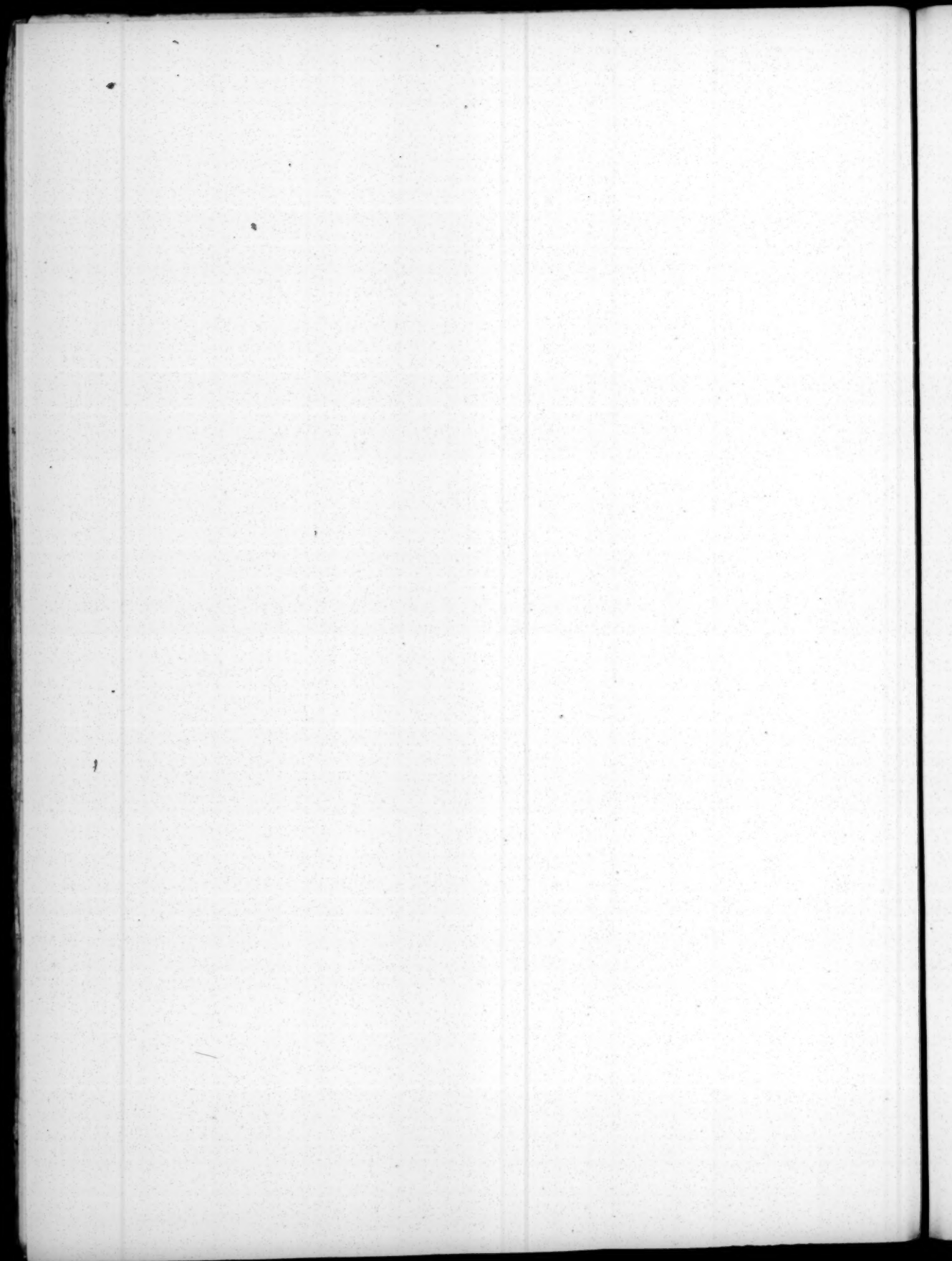
formerly found in Russia  
and islands in the Caspian  
by K. L. Brown Nov. 1883. It  
is a medium size bird, with  
brown and white plumage.

S. L. K.



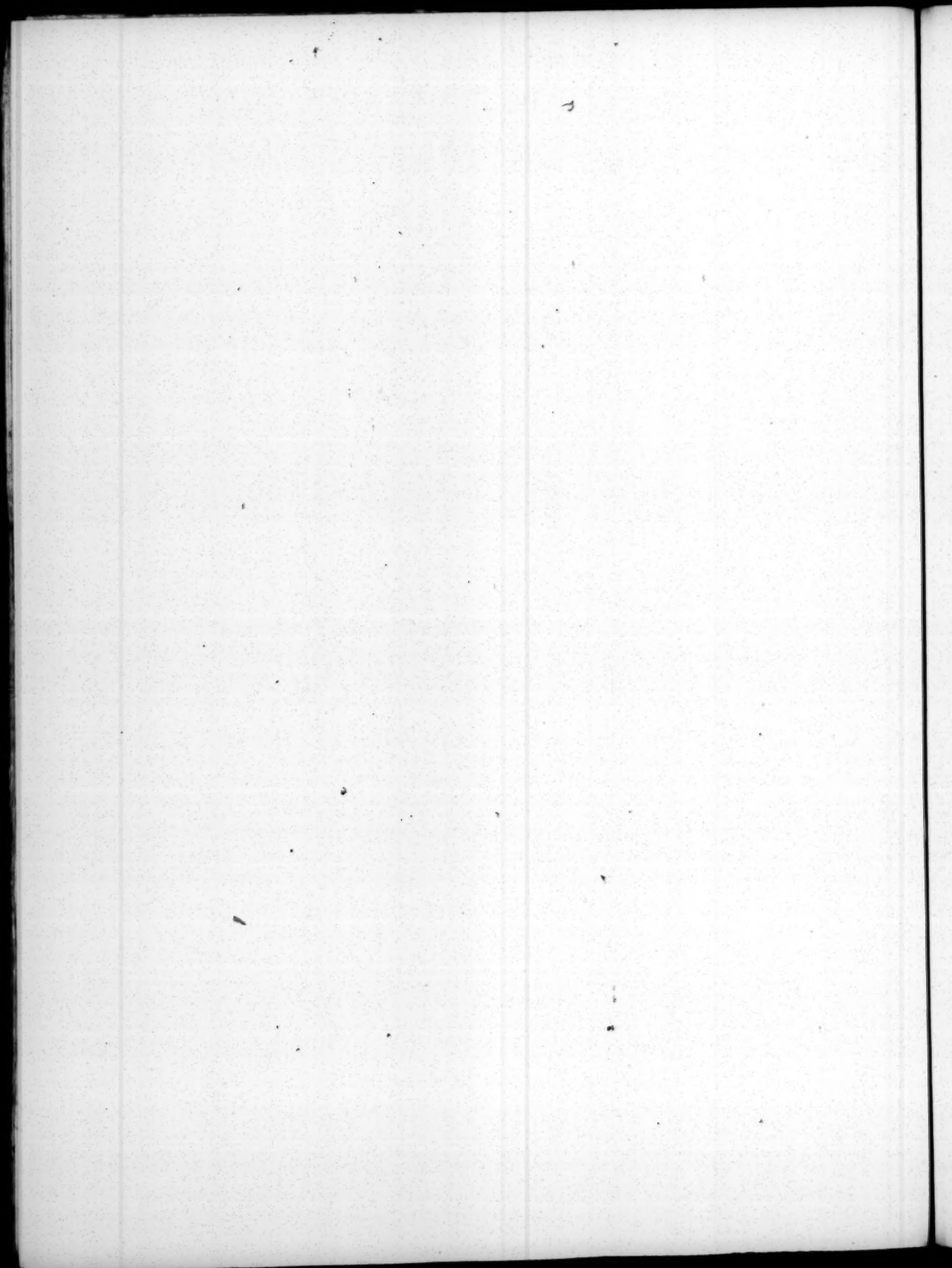














7



F 9.27.47  
STC  
11400

